

User Guide

Your Palm® Treo™ 800w Smartphone

Intellectual property notices

© 2007 Palm Inc. All rights reserved. Palm, Treo, and the Palm and Treo logos are among the trademarks or registered trademarks owned by or licensed to Palm Inc. All other brand and product names are or may be trademarks of, and are used to identify products or services of, their respective owners.

The Treo trademark is used by Palm Inc. in Sweden and Denmark with the express consent of Pfizer and its affiliated companies. The products marketed and/or sold by Palm Inc. under the Treo trademark are in no way affiliated with Pfizer or its business.

This product is protected by one or more of the following United States patents:

7,007,239; 6,976,226; 6,975,304; 6,965,375; 6,961,567; 6,961,029; 6,957,397; 6,952,571; 6,950,988; 6,947,975; 6,947,017; 6,943,667; 6,940,490; 6,924,752; 6,907,233; 6,906,701; 6,906,741; 6,901,276; 6,850,780; 6,845,408; 6,842,628; 6,842,335; 6,831,662; 6,819,552; 6,804,699; 6,795,710; 6,788,285; 6,781,824; 6,781,575; 6,766,490; 6,745,047; 6,744,451; 6,738,852; 6,732,105; 6,724,720; 6,721,892; 6,712,638; 6,708,280; 6,6976,39; 6,687,339; 6,685,328; 6,665,803; 6,618,044; 6,590,588; 6,593,476; 6,522,148; 6,523,124; 6,519,141; 6,516,202; 6,490,155; 6,480,146; 6,457,143; 6,456,247; 6,442,637; 6,441,824; 6,437,543; 6,429,625; 6,425,087; 6,389,572; 6,388,877; 6,381,650; 6,363,082; 6,344,848; 6,317,085; 6,241,537; 6,222,857; 6,185,423; 6,147,314; 6,115,248; 6,064,342; D421,251; D429,252; D466,128; D478,091, Patent pending.

This product also is licensed under United States patent 6,058,304.

MPEG Layer-3 audio decoding technology is licensed from Fraunhofer IIS and Thomson. Palm, Inc. is an authorized licensee of the MultiMediaCard trademark. This product is protected by certain intellectual property rights of Microsoft Corporation. Use or distribution of such technology outside of this product is prohibited without a license from Microsoft or an authorized Microsoft subsidiary. All rights reserved.

Disclaimer and limitation of liability

Palm Inc. and its suppliers assume no responsibility for any damage or loss resulting from the use of this guide. Palm Inc. and its suppliers assume no responsibility for any loss or claims by third parties that

may arise through the use of this software. Palm Inc. and its suppliers assume no responsibility for any damage or loss caused by deletion of data as a result of malfunction, dead battery, or repairs. Be sure to make backup copies of all important data on other media to protect against data loss.

End user notice

Microsoft® Voice Command Version 1.5 for Windows Mobile®

NOTE The Voice Command application is not available in all languages. See Setting up voice commands.

IMPORTANT Do not become distracted from driving safely if operating a motor vehicle while using Device Software.

Operating certain parts of this Device requires user attention. Diverting attention away from the road while driving can possibly cause an accident or other serious consequences. Even occasional, short diversions of attention can be dangerous if your attention is diverted away from your driving task at a critical time. Do not change system settings or enter data non-verbally (using your hands) while driving. Stop the vehicle in a safe and legal manner before attempting these operations. This is important since while setting up or changing some functions you might be required to distract your attention away from the road and remove your hands from the wheel.

Microsoft makes no representations, warranties, or other determinations that ANY use of the Software Product is legal, safe, or in any manner recommended or intended while driving or otherwise operating a motor vehicle.

General Operation

Voice Command Control: Many of the functions of the Device Software can be accomplished using only voice commands. Using voice commands while driving allows you to initiate the command with a button and then operate the Device mostly without removing your hands from the wheel.

Prolonged Views of Screen: If you are driving, do not access any function requiring a prolonged view of the screen. Pull over in a safe and legal manner before attempting to access a function of the system requiring prolonged attention. Even occasional short scans to

the screen may be hazardous if your attention has been diverted away from your driving task at a critical time.

Volume Setting: Do not raise the volume excessively. Keep the volume at a level where you can still hear outside traffic and emergency signals while driving. Driving while unable to hear these sounds could cause an accident.

Let Your Judgment Prevail: The Device Software is only an aid. Make your driving decisions based on your observations of local conditions and existing traffic regulations. The Device Software is not a substitute for your personal judgment.

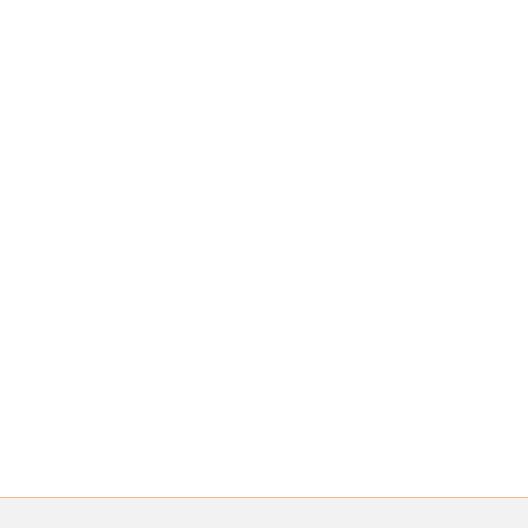
Use of Speech Recognition Functions: Speech recognition software is inherently a statistical process which is subject to errors. It is your responsibility to monitor the speech recognition functions and address any errors.

Palm Take Back and Recycling Program

As part of Palm's corporate commitment to be a good steward of the environment, we strive to use environmentally friendly materials, reduce waste, and develop the highest standards in electronics recycling. Our recycling program keeps Palm handheld devices, Treo smartphones, and mobile companions out of landfills by evaluating them for possible reuse and recycling.

Palm customers may participate in the recycling program free of charge. Visit palm.com/recycle for additional details and information about how you can help reduce electronic waste.

PN: XXX-XXXXX-XX v 0.0



Contents

Chapter 1: Welcome What's in the box? What do I need to get started?	 	 	 	3
Chapter 2: Setting up Palm Treo 800w smartphone overview Inserting the SIM card and battery Charging the battery Making your first call Setting up synchronization	 	 	 	7 9 11 14
Chapter 3: Moving around on your Palm® Treo™ 800w smartphone Navigating around the screen Using the keyboard Opening and closing applications Using your Today screen	 	 	 	19 26 30
Chapter 4: Your phone Turning your Palm® Treo™ 800w smartphone on/off Making calls from the Today screen Other ways of making calls Receiving calls Using voicemail What can I do during a call? Defining speed-dial buttons Using a phone headset Customizing phone settings What are all those icons?				35 36 41 42 43 44 50 52 57

Chapter 5: Synchronizing information Synchronization overview How do I synchronize? What can I synchronize? Setting up your computer for synchronization Synchronizing using the sync cable Setting up wireless synchronization Other ways to synchronize Setting synchronization options	71 71 72 75 80 81
Chapter 6: Your email Setting up email Sending and receiving messages Working with email messages Working with meeting invitations Sending email messages from within another application	93 101 106
Chapter 7: Your text and multimedia messages Using the Messaging application Customizing the Messaging application	121
Chapter 8: Your connections to the web and wireless devices Browsing the web Connecting to devices with Bluetooth® wireless technology Using your device as a wireless modem	137
Chapter 9: Your photos, videos, and music Synchronizing your media files Camera Pictures & Videos Windows Media Player Mobile	

Chapter 10: Your personal information organizer Contacts Calendar Tasks Notes	
Chapter 11: Your Microsoft Office and other document tools Synchronizing your Microsoft Office files Word Mobile PowerPoint Mobile Excel Mobile PDF Viewer	
Chapter 12: Your application and info management tools Finding information Installing applications Removing applications Sharing information Beaming information Using expansion cards Calculator	
Chapter 13: Your personal settings Today screen settings System sound settings Display and appearance settings Application settings Locking your smartphone and info System settings Connection settings Submitting usage information to Microsoft	

Chapter 14: Troubleshooting	59
Transferring info from another device	61
Reinstalling the desktop software	
Resetting your smartphone	62
Performance	66
Screen20	67
Network connection	67
Synchronization	72
Email	78
Web	81
Camera	82
Third-party applications	33
Making room on your smartphone	84
Voice quality	35
Where to learn more26	87
Terms	89
Important Safety Information29	95
Specifications	01
Index	05

Welcome

intro text here

In this chapter

What's in the box?	3
What do I need to get started?	4

Congratulations on the purchase of your Palm® Treo™ 800w smartphone. In one compact and indispensable device, you now have all of the following:

- · An advanced wireless smartphone
- A Windows Mobile® organizer with portable expansion capability (miniSD)
- High-speed data with GPRS/EDGE and CDMA2000 (3G and HSDPA) support
- · A 1.3-megapixel digital camera
- Support for numerous mobile email solutions
- · Text and multimedia messaging
- Windows Media® Player Mobile
- Microsoft® Office Mobile suite

This guide will help you set up your smartphone and quickly learn to use it.

NOTE If you want to use your phone and send and receive text messages, you need a service contract with your wireless service provider. If you also want to browse the web and send and receive email, you need not only a service contract but also a data service plan from your

wireless service provider. You may also need a specific data service plan to send and receive multimedia messages. Data speeds vary based on network availability and capacity.

TIP LOOK HERE: Don't miss the helpful tips and cross-references given in these boxes.

What's in the box?

All of the following items should be in the smartphone box:

Hardware

- Treo 800w smartphone
- Rechargeable battery (1200 mAh)
- AC charger (with international adapters in some smartphone packages)
- USB sync cable
- Stereo headset
- Palm Vehicle Power Charger
- Screen protector

TIP Visit www.palm.com to purchase a replacement screen protector if the original one becomes scratched or worn

Documentation and software

- Read This First setup poster
- Treo 800w Smartphone Quick Reference
- Windows Mobile Getting Started CD. which includes the following:
 - Link to Microsoft Office Outlook® software download
 - Desktop synchronization software (ActiveSvnc® desktop software for Windows XP. Windows Mobile Device Center for Windows Vista)
 - Windows Media® Player 10
 - · Additional software for your smartphone
 - User Guide (this guide)
- Palm warranty
- End User License Agreement

What do I need to get started?

As you work through the instructions in this guide, you need all the items that came in the smartphone box (see What's in the box?), as well as the following:

- You must have an activated wireless. account (using a SIM card from your wireless service provider) with data services
- If you plan to synchronize personal information between your smartphone and a computer, you need access to that computer during setup.
- You must also have your smartphone within range of your wireless service provider's cellular coverage.

Setting up

Congratulations on the purchase of your new Palm® Treo™ 800w smartphone. You're about to discover the many things about your smartphone that will help you better manage your life and have fun, too.

As you become more familiar with your smartphone, you'll want to personalize the settings and add applications to make it uniquely yours. But first, follow these few easy steps to set up your smartphone and get it running.

Benefits

- Know where your smartphone controls are located
- Start using your smartphone right away

In this chapter

Palm Treo 800w smartphone overview	7
Inserting the SIM card and battery	9
Charging the battery	11
Making your first call	14
Setting up synchronization	16

Palm Treo 800w smartphone overview

Front view

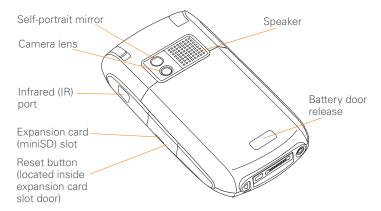


TIP Be careful not to scratch or crush your smartphone screen. Do not store it in a place where other items might damage it.

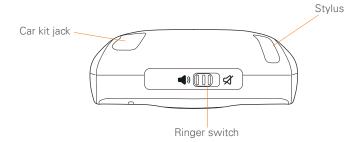
DID YOU KNOW? By default, pressing and holding the Side button opens the Windows Media® Player Mobile application (see Windows Media Player Mobile). You can change the function of the Side button (see Reassigning buttons).

IMPORTANT The smartphone speaker includes a large magnet, so be sure not to store your smartphone near credit cards or other items that could be demagnetized.

Back view



Top view



DID YOU KNOW? The Ringer switch silences all sounds, including music, at once; you don't need to hunt for "off" or "mute" settings in individual applications.

Inserting the SIM card and battery

Your SIM card contains account information such as your phone number and voicemail access number. To use your smartphone's phone, email, or web

features, you need to insert a SIM card. If a SIM card is not included in your smartphone box, your wireless service provider will provide you with one.

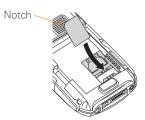
To take advantage of the high-speed data connection available on your smartphone, you need to have a 3G SIM card. A 3G SIM card has "3G" on it.

TIP If you don't have a SIM card, contact your wireless service provider.

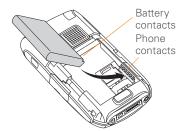
1 Use one hand to press the Battery door release, and use your other hand to slide the battery door downward to remove it from your smartphone.



- 2 If the battery is installed, remove it. Slide your finger under the left side of the battery (nearest the stylus) and lift up to remove it.
 - TIP It is easier to remove the battery if you first remove the stylus from your smartphone.
- 3 With the metal contacts facing the battery compartment, slide the SIM card into the cutout in the lower-right corner of the compartment until you feel it snap into place. Align the notches to make sure you have the card oriented correctly.



4 Align the metal contacts on the battery with the contacts inside the battery compartment, insert the battery into the compartment at a 45-degree angle, and then press it into place.



5 Slide the battery door back into place. Your smartphone screen turns on. Wait for the progress bar to fill and the Windows Mobile* screen to appear.

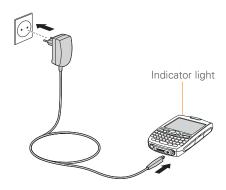
- TIP If your smartphone does not turn on after you insert the battery, you need to connect it to the AC charger to charge it (see <u>Charging the battery</u>). If it still doesn't start, perform a soft reset (see Performing a soft reset).
- **6** Follow the onscreen instructions to finish the installation
- 7 If your SIM card is not already activated, follow the activation steps provided by your wireless service provider, or contact your wireless service provider directly for assistance. If you plan to use email and web browsing, you need a data service plan from your wireless service provider in addition to your service contract. You may also need a data service plan to send and receive multimedia messages.
 - TIP You can buy an extra battery as a spare for long airplane trips or periods of heavy data use. To ensure proper functioning and avoid voiding the warranty, be sure to use batteries from Palm only. Visit www.palm.com.

Charging the battery

Although the battery may come with a sufficient charge to complete the setup process, we recommend that after setup you charge your smartphone for three hours (or until the indicator light is solid green) to give it a full charge. See Maximizing battery life for tips on making your battery's power last longer.

BEFORE YOU BEGIN Make sure the battery is inserted in your smartphone before you charge. If you connect your smartphone to a power source without the battery inserted, nothing happens.

- 1 If you have international adapters in your smartphone package, prepare the AC charger by inserting the adapter that fits the wall outlet you're going to use.
- 2 Plug the AC charger into a wall outlet.
- With the arrow on the connector facing up (toward your smartphone screen), connect the charger cable to the bottom of your smartphone.



- 4 Check the indicator light to confirm that your smartphone is charging.
 - Solid red indicates that your smartphone is charging.
 - Solid green indicates that your smartphone is fully charged.

DID YOU KNOW? If the battery is low, the indicator light flashes red.

When your smartphone is on (see <u>Turning</u> your Palm[®] <u>Treo™</u> 800w smartphone on/off),

the onscreen battery icon displays the charging status:

- A solid lightning bolt indicates that the battery is connected to a wall outlet and is charging.
- A shaded lightning bolt indicates that the battery is connected to a wall outlet and is fully charged.
- A partial battery without a lightning bolt indicates that the battery is not connected to a wall outlet and that it has some power.
- An exclamation point (!) indicates that the battery needs to be charged immediately.



Battery

DID YOU KNOW? If your battery ever becomes fully drained, your info remains safely stored on your smartphone. Recharge the battery to access your info.

TIP You can also charge your smartphone from your computer by connecting them with the sync cable.

Maximizing battery life

Battery life depends on how you use your smartphone. You can maximize the life of your battery by following a few easy guidelines:

- Charge your smartphone whenever you're at your desk, or charge it overnight each day. The battery in your smartphone has a much longer useful life if you charge it frequently instead of waiting until it's fully drained.
- If you spend a lot of time using the camera, games, media players (including listening to music with wireless headphones using the built-in Bluetooth® wireless technology), or other applications, keep an eye on the battery icon and charge when necessary.

The wireless features (phone, email, messaging, and web) on your smartphone generally consume more power than the organizer features. If you don't plan to use the wireless features on your smartphone for a while, turn off your wireless services (see Turning wireless services on/off). You can forward calls to a different number or let all calls be picked up by voicemail (see Forwarding calls). To see if your wireless services are on, tap the phone-off **T**_X icon and select **Wireless Manager**.

POD YOU KNOW? You can also see if your wireless services are on by pressing Menu (right action key) and selecting Wireless Manager.

 If you are synchronizing email and other information directly with your corporate Exchange server using Microsoft Exchange ActiveSync®, set the synchronization interval to a maximum of every 15 minutes during peak times and every hour (or turned off completely) during non-peak times (see Setting the synchronization schedule).

- Turn off the Bluetooth feature when you do not need to make a Bluetooth connection (see <u>Entering basic</u> Bluetooth settings).
- Turn the voice command feature off (see Setting up voice commands).
- As with any mobile phone, if you are in an area with no wireless coverage, your smartphone searches for a signal, which consumes power. If you cannot move to an area of better coverage, temporarily turn off your phone (see <u>Turning your</u> phone off).
- Turn down the screen brightness (see Adjusting the brightness).
- Set your screen to turn off automatically after a shorter period of inactivity (see Optimizing power settings).
- Turn off the option to receive beamed information (see <u>Beaming an entry or</u> file).
- Keep your battery away from direct sunlight and other sources of heat.
 Temperatures over 50 degrees Celsius (120 degrees Fahrenheit) can permanently reduce the capacity and life span of any lithium-ion battery.

Making your first call



1 Press Phone/Send to display your Today screen.

You can also press **Power/End** to display your Today screen, unless you are on a call. If you're on a call, pressing Power/End hangs up the call.

- 2 If prompted, press Center to turn off Keyguard (see Locking your keyboard (Keyguard) for more info).
- **3** Use the number pad on the keyboard to enter the number you want to call.

The Dial Lookup list might appear while you are dialing a number. Continue entering numbers to place the call. For more info on the Dial Lookup list, see <u>Dialing by contact</u> name.

- 4 Press Phone/Send to dial.
- **5** When your call is complete, press **Power/End** to end the call.



Adjusting call volume

While a call is in progress, press the **Volume** button on the side of your smartphone to adjust the call volume.



What's my number?

- 1 Make sure your phone is on (see <u>Turning your phone on</u>).
- 2 If you do not see your Today screen, press **Phone/Send** .
- **3** Press **Menu** (right action key).
- 4 Select Preferences > Phone Settings.
- **5** On the Phone tab, look for your phone number below the title bar.

Look here for your phone number



6 Press OK .

The If your phone number doesn't appear on the Phone Settings screen, your network has not yet sent the number to the SIM card (this does not affect SIM card functionality). Turn your phone off, wait a few hours, and then turn on your phone and repeat these steps. If your phone number still does not appear, please contact your wireless service provider for assistance.

Setting up synchronization

After you've finished setting up your smartphone, we recommend that you set up a synchronization method to get the most out of your smartphone.

Synchronizing means that information that has been entered or updated in one place—your smartphone, your computer, or your corporate server—is automatically updated in the other (see Synchronizing information)



Moving around on your Palm® Treo™ 800w smartphone

Have you ever been to a new city and felt a bit lost until you figured out the streets? Learning to move around on your Palm® Treo™ 800w smartphone is similar. Most applications that work on your smartphone use the same set of controls. So once you learn how to use these controls, you'll be driving all over town and you won't even need a map.

Benefits

- Quickly move around and complete tasks in applications using one thumb on the 5-way navigator
- · Access extra features with menus
- · Find and open applications quickly

In this chapter

Navigating around the screen	19
Using the keyboard	26
Opening and closing applications	30
Using your Today screen	31

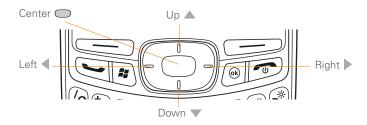
Navigating around the screen

To navigate around the smartphone screen, you can use the 5-way navigator or you can tap items on the screen with the stylus. As you become familiar with your smartphone, you'll find your own favorite way to scroll, highlight, and select items.

Using the 5-way, press **Right** ▶, **Left** ◀, **Up** ▲, or **Down** ▼ to move around the

screen. Press **Center** to highlight and select items

- TIP Some third-party applications may not work with the 5-way navigator, and you must use the stylus instead.
- **DID YOU KNOW?** Custom navigation features are available when you browse the web using Internet Explorer (see <u>Viewing a web page</u>).
- The arrow icons that indicate directions on the 5-way are different from the onscreen scroll arrows and the arrows that indicate that a list is available (see <u>Selecting options in a list</u>).





Scrolling through screens

As on a computer, on your smartphone you scroll to move from field to field or page to page, or in some cases to highlight an item or option in a list. There are several methods of scrolling:

- Press the 5-way on the front of your smartphone. Press Right ▶, Left ◄, Up ▲, or Down ▼ to move to the next field, button, or action in that direction.
- Press and hold Option
 while pressing Up
 or Down
 to scroll one screen at a time. These keys work just like the Page Up and Page Down keys on your computer keyboard.
 - TIP Can't find the Option key? See <u>Using the</u> keyboard.

TIP When you are using applications such as Inbox, Internet Explorer Mobile, and Word Mobile, press and hold **Option** while pressing **Left** or **Right** on the 5-way to automatically go to the top and bottom of a screen.

- When viewing a screen with tabs, such as when adding a contact, press
 Down ▼ to scroll to the tabs, and then press Left ◀ or Right ▶ to move between tabs.
- When inside a text field, press Right
 or Left

 to move to the next character,
 and press Up
 or Down
 to move
 between lines.
- When inside a list, press and hold
 Up ▲ or Down ▼ to rapidly scroll through the list.

Tap an onscreen scroll arrow.



Tap and drag the slider of an onscreen scroll har

Closing screens

To accept the information you entered on a screen and to return to the previous screen—or to return to the previous screen without making any changes—do one of the following:

- Press OK (⊕).
- Use the stylus to tap ok or X in the upper-right corner of the screen. These

buttons are not accessible using the 5-way.

Highlighting and selecting items

On most screens, one item—a button, a list entry, or a check box—is highlighted by default. The highlight identifies which item is affected by your next action. Use the 5-way to move the highlight from one item to another before opening or selecting it.

The best way to learn to use the 5-way is to experiment. Press the 5-way buttons, and as you do, follow the movement of the border around the screen. The behavior of the 5-way varies slightly in each application.

The highlight can take one of two forms, depending on what is highlighted:

 Border: This rectangular border highlights items such as an onscreen button (such as OK, Dismiss, or Hide), a check box, an option, or a web link.



 Light text on a dark background: This highlights items such as a phone number, an email address, text, or an item in a list.



After highlighting an item with the 5-way, you can select or activate it by pressing **Center** or by tapping the item with the stylus.

Highlighting text

You can use the stylus to highlight text on the screen. Tap and drag the stylus across the text you want to highlight. To highlight a word, double-tap it. To highlight a paragraph, triple-tap it.

When text is highlighted, you can press **Backspace** to delete the highlighted text.

Using the action keys

The left and right action keys give you quick access to tasks that you can do on the current screen, so the action key items vary from application to application and from screen to screen. Look on the screen. directly above the action key to see the action that it takes in the current context. In some contexts, these keys may do nothing at all. In most cases the right action key opens the menu, and the left action key activates a specific command, such as New or Edit. Remember that action key functions vary from screen to screen, so be sure to check the onscreen label before pressing the action keys.



Selecting menu items

In many applications, a menu provides access to additional features. The menu is hidden until you press Menu (right action key). To get the most out of your smartphone, it's a good idea to familiarize yourself with the additional features available through the menu in various applications.

1 Press **Menu** (right action key) to display an application's menu.



2 Press Up ▲ or Down ▼ to highlight a menu item.



- 3 If an arrow appears next to a menu display additional options for that item, and then press Up ▲ or Down ▼ to highlight a menu item. To return to the main menu without making a selection. press **Left** ◀.
- 4 Press Center to select the menu item, or press **Left** ◀ or **Menu** (right action key) to close the menu and cancel your selection.

PID YOU KNOW? You can select most menu items by pressing a key on the keyboard. To guickly access a menu item, press Menu (right action key) followed by the underlined letter in the menu item's name.

Selecting options in a shortcut menu

Most applications also provide access to context-sensitive shortcut menus—similar to the right-click menus on a computer. The shortcut menu options vary based on the highlighted selection.

1 Highlight the item whose shortcut menu you want to see.



2 Press and hold Center to open the shortcut menu.

TIP You can also tap and hold the stylus on an item to open the shortcut menu.

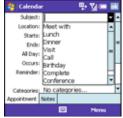
- 3 Press Up ▲ or Down ▼ to highlight a menu item
- 4 Press Center to select the menu. item, or press **Left** ◀ to cancel your selection

Selecting options in a list

Lists enable you to select from a range of options. You can identify whether a list is available when you select the field. If a rectangle appears around the field along with a downward-pointing arrow, a list is

available. Lists are different from the menus described earlier in this section



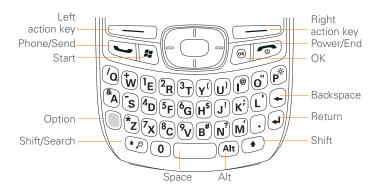


TP When selecting fields you might not see the downward-pointing arrow until you press Center on the 5-way. To select from a list, do any of the following:

- Use your stylus to tap the arrow, and then tap the item in the list.

DID YOU KNOW? In fields where you see a downward-pointing arrow but no rectangle, you must tap the arrow with the stylus to display the list.

Using the keyboard



NO YOU KNOW? You can also use the onscreen keyboard to enter letters, numbers, and other characters in applications that support this feature. Tap the keyboard icon in the center at the bottom of any screen where it appears. After opening the keyboard, you can set various input options by tapping the arrow to the right of the keyboard icon.

Understanding the keyboard backlight

Your smartphone includes a keyboard backlight for low light conditions. The keyboard backlight activates automatically when the screen turns on. The backlight turns off automatically when the screen turns off or when you are on a call or playing music in the background for longer than the time specified in Backlight Settings. You can set different time intervals depending on whether the smartphone is operating on battery power

or is connected to an external power source. The backlight also turns off when an application's power-saving features turn it off.

TIP You can change the backlight shut-off interval. Press **Start** and select **Settings**. Select the **System** tab, and then select **Backlight**. Set the time interval on the Battery Power tab and on the External Power tab.

Entering lowercase and uppercase letters

By default, the first letter of each sentence or field is capitalized and the remaining text you enter is lowercase. To enter other uppercase letters, do one of the following:

- Press Shift (or), and then enter a letter. You don't need to press and hold Shift while entering a letter.
- Press Shift (② or ③) twice to turn on Caps Lock, and then enter a series of letters. When Caps Lock is on, this symbol appears at the bottom of the screen: ♠. To turn off Caps Lock, press Shift (④ or ⑥) again.

You can turn off the first-letter capitalization setting (see Setting input options).

Entering numbers, punctuation, and symbols

Numbers, punctuation, and symbols appear above the letters on the keys. To enter these characters, do one of the following:

- Press Option , and then press the key of the desired character. You don't need to hold Option while pressing the key.
- Press Option twice to turn on Option Lock, and then press the desired keys to enter a series of characters.
 When Option Lock is on, this symbol appears at the bottom of the screen: To turn off Option Lock, press Option again.



Entering other symbols and accented characters

You can enter symbols and accented characters that don't appear on the keys by using the alternate characters list.

The alternate characters are grouped according to their similarity to the corresponding key. For example, the alternate character available for the R key is *, and for the T key is **. If you press the wrong key, press **Backspace** to return to the full list of alternate characters. You can then press another key.

- 1 Press Alt (4th to display the alternate character list
- 2 Narrow the list by pressing the key that corresponds to the character you want. For example, to enter an é, press e. See the table below for a list of corresponding characters.
- **3** Press **Up** ▲ or **Down** ▼ to highlight the desired character.
- **4** Press **Center** to insert the character.

Symbols and accented characters					
Press Alt (Att) and press	to select	Press Alt (Alt) and press	to select	Press Alt (Alt) and press	to select
а	áàäâãåæ	n	ñ	x or X	ΧФ
А	ÁÀÄÂÃÅÆ	N	Ñ	У	ýÿ
b or B	ß	0	óòöôœõ	Υ	ÝΫ
С	碩	0	ÓÒÖÔŒÕ	0	0
С	Ç¢©	p or P	1	1	1 1/4 1/2
е	é è ë ê	r or R	®	2	2
Е	ÉÈËÊ	S	ßš	3	3 3/4
f or F	f	S	ߊ	!	i
i	ſìïî	t or T	TM	\$	€£¥¢
1	ĺÌÏÎ	u	úùüû	Option + K (;)	: :-) :-(;-)
l or L	£	U	ÚÙÜÛ	Option + N (?)	¿

Press Alt (a) by itself to select these characters:

Opening and closing applications

Opening applications

You can access all the applications on your smartphone through the Start menu.

- 1 Press **Start** to open the Start menu.
- 2 Use the 5-way navigator to highlight the application you want to use. To view additional applications, select Programs.





With the Start menu open, press the letter underlined in the application's name to open the app. For example, press **H** to open Help. Or, select the shortcut icons at the top of the Start menu to open recently used applications.

In Programs, press a letter to jump to the first app that begins with that letter. For example, press ${\bf C}$ to jump to Calculator. Press ${\bf C}$ again to jump to Camera, and so on.

DID YOU KNOW? You can open apps by pressing and holding **Option** and then pressing **Phone/Send, Start**, or **OK**. You can change which app a button combination opens (see Reassigning buttons).

- **3** Press **Center** to open the highlighted application.
- 4 (Optional) Press **OK** (a) to return to Programs and open another application. The current application continues to run in the background.

Closing applications

You can have several applications open at once, so you don't need to exit an application to open another one. In most cases, applications close automatically

when available memory is low, but you can also close applications manually.

NOTE If you press OK (a) to leave an application, the current application continues to run in the background. Manually closing applications helps conserve battery power and frees up memory.

- 1 Press and hold **OK** (a) to open Memory Settings.
- 2 On the Running Programs tab, do one of the following:



- Select the application you want to close, and then select **Stop** to close it.
- Select Stop All to close all your open applications.

Using your Today screen

From your Today screen you can quickly look up a contact, make a call, see your latest calendar appointments, see the number of unread email messages, and even perform a web search.

To access your Today screen, press **Phone/Send**.

- If you press **Phone/Send** while a number is highlighted, your smartphone dials the number. If a number is highlighted, deselect the number, or use the Start menu to access the Today screen.
- TIP You can also open the Today screen by pressing Power/End, unless you are on a call. If you're on a call, pressing Power/End hangs up the call. If the Today screen is already displayed and you're not on a call, pressing Power/End turns off the screen display.





- Title bar and status info: See What are all those icons? to learn about the icons that appear in this area.
- Dial Lookup field: Type the number you want to call and press Center to dial, or begin typing a name to look up the associated number in Contacts. See <u>Dialing by contact name</u> for more info.
- Web search field: Enter a web address or a keyword, and press Center or Return to view a list of search results based on the address or word (data services connection required).

- Speed-dial entries: Select a speed-dial button—either a picture or text—to call the number assigned to it. See <u>Defining</u> <u>speed-dial buttons</u> to create your own.
 - TIP You can select a picture for your Today screen background and select which items appear in the Today screen. See <u>Today screen settings</u> for details.

Your phone

The phone, along with the Today screen, is your home base for making and receiving calls.

You can creatively manage multiple calls; for example, you can swap between calls, send text messages to ignored calls, and create conference calls.

And you can do more than manage your phone calls. You can send text messages, open applications, go to your favorite web pages, see your upcoming appointments, and even find out how many unread email messages you have.

Benefits

- Stay in touch—you choose how
- Work in other applications when on an active call
- Create speed-dial buttons with pictures of your friends

In this chapter

Turning your Palm® Treo™ 800w smartphone on/off
Making calls from the Today screen
Other ways of making calls
Receiving calls
Using voicemail
What can I do during a call?
Defining speed-dial buttons
Customizing phone settings
What are all those icons?

Turning your Palm® Treo™ 800w smartphone on/off

The term *smartphone* refers to the device and its physical aspects. The term *phone* refers to the wireless feature of your Palm® Treo™ 800w smartphone that enables you to connect to your wireless service provider's network so that you can make and receive calls and send and receive data.

The phone and the screen of your smartphone can be turned off and on separately. This means you can wake up the screen to use just the organizer features of your device without turning on the phone. Also, when the screen is turned off, the phone can be on and ready for you to receive phone calls or messages.

Turning your phone on

Press and hold **Power/End** . When your smartphone locates a signal, your wireless service provider's name appears in the upper-left of the screen and the

signal-strength icon appears at the top of the screen.

When you turn on your phone, it connects to a mobile network so that you can make and receive phone calls and use other wireless services (if supported by the local network). When you are inside a coverage area, the **signal-strength** icon has bars in it. If you're outside a coverage area, the indicator light flashes amber and no bars appear in the signal-strength icon.

Turning your phone off

Press and hold **Power/End** . When your phone is off, the **phone-off 7x** icon appears at the top of the screen and **Phone Off** appears in the upper-left of the screen. Your phone is not connected to any mobile network. Although you can no longer use the phone, you can still use Microsoft Office apps and all the organizer features of your smartphone.

DID YOU KNOW? You can also turn your phone on and off from the Today screen by pressing Menu (right action key), selecting Wireless Manager, and then selecting Phone.

DID YOU KNOW? You can go to Wireless Manager by tapping the **signal-strength** icon and tapping **Wireless Manager**.

Waking up the screen and turning it off

Wake up the screen and leave the phone turned off when you want to use only the organizer features of your smartphone, for example, when you're on a plane and want to look at your calendar. You can also turn off the screen without turning off the wireless features on your smartphone. You can turn your screen on and off by pressing **Power/End**

TIP You can set how long the screen stays on. Press **Start**, select **Settings**, select the **System** tab, and then select **Power**. Select the **Advanced** tab. Adjust the number of minutes the phone stays on when idle using the **On battery power** setting.

Making calls from the Today screen

Your smartphone offers several ways to make phone calls from the Today screen.

Dialing from the Today screen

BEFORE YOU BEGIN Make sure your phone is on and that you're inside a coverage area (see <u>Turning your phone on</u>).

- 1 Go to your Today screen.
- 2 Using the numbered keys on the keyboard, enter a phone number in the Dial Lookup field.



DID YOU KNOW? When you're dialing a phone number or are on a call, you can enter * and # without first pressing Option. This makes it easy to respond to further dialing instructions or to press options when responding to automated instructions.

3 Press Phone/Send 🕶 to dial.

NOTE You do not need to press Option to access the numbers on the keyboard. However, when dialing short numbers, the number may conflict with a contact name. If this occurs, press **Option** to avoid starting a contact lookup. For emergencies, you can dial your national emergency number (such as 911 or 112) without pressing Option first.

- If you press **Phone/Send** while a number is highlighted, your smartphone dials the number. If a number is highlighted and you want to access the Today screen, deselect the number or use the Start menu.
- TIP If you lock your smartphone and select Simple PIN as the password type, you can dial an emergency number by entering the number in the password field and pressing **Phone/Send**. You do not need to press Option before entering the number. However, if you select Strong alphanumeric as the password type, you must first press **Option** twice before entering the number in the password field. See <u>Locking your smartphone</u>.

Dialing with a speed-dial button

Your smartphone enables you to create both picture and text speed-dial buttons so that you can select a button on the Today screen to quickly dial a number.

BEFORE YOU BEGIN

 Create some speed-dial buttons. See <u>Defining speed-dial buttons</u>. You can customize the default speed-dial buttons. See <u>Editing a speed-dial</u> button. Make sure your phone is on and that you're inside a coverage area (see <u>Turning your phone on</u>).

You can make a call using your speed-dial buttons by doing any of the following:

 Highlight a speed-dial button with the 5-way navigator, and then press
 Center .



- Tap a speed-dial button with the stylus.
- Press and hold the Quick Key that you assigned to the speed-dial button.
- To dial an alternate number for a contact, highlight the speed-dial button and press and hold Center or tap and hold the button, and then select a number from the shortcut menu.

To see more speed-dial buttons, highlight the picture speed-dial area and press **Right** ▶ or **Left** ◀ repeatedly, or highlight the text speed-dial area and press **Up** ▲, **Down** ▼, **Right** ▶, or **Left** ◀.

TIP You can hide your speed-dial buttons on your Today Screen and still use your Quick Keys to call a speed-dial number.

Dialing by contact name

You can look up contacts quickly by entering just a few letters of a contact's name directly from your Today screen.

BEFORE YOU BEGIN Before you can dial a number by contact name, you must create some contacts (see <u>Adding a contact</u>.) or import them by synchronizing (see <u>Synchronizing information</u>).

Make sure your phone is on and that you're inside a coverage area (see <u>Turning your phone on</u>).

- 1 Go to your Today screen.
- 2 Using the keyboard, begin entering one of the following for the contact you want to call:



- First name (JOH for John)
- Last name (SMI for Smith)
- First initial, a space, and then last initial (J S for John Smith)
- A few letters of the first name, a space, and then a few letters of the last name (JOH SMI for John Smith)

For example, entering SM finds both Smilla Anderson and John Smith. Entering SM AN finds only Smilla Anderson.

To clear the Dial Lookup field and start another Contacts search, press **OK**. To delete letters when correcting a misspelled name, press **Backspace**.

- TIP To see a contact's address, company, and other details, press **Up** on the 5-way to highlight the name, and then press **Center**.
- 3 Several options for contacting the person are displayed, depending on what information you have entered for the contact. Highlight the phone number you want to dial for the contact.
- 4 Press Phone/Send or press Center to dial.

DID YOU KNOW? After you look up a contact, you can select how you want to communicate with that person. When a contact's name or phone number is highlighted on the search results list, press and hold **Center** on the 5-way or tap and hold with the stylus, and then select the communication method you want to use.

Dialing using the onscreen Dial Pad

The onscreen Dial Pad is useful when you need to dial numbers that are expressed as letters and when you need large numbers that you can tap with your finger or the stylus.

IND YOU KNOW? You can paste numbers directly into the Dial Pad. Copy a number from another application, switch to Dial Pad, and then press and hold **Center** on the 5-way to paste the number.

BEFORE YOU BEGIN Make sure your phone is on and that you're inside a coverage area (see <u>Turning your phone on</u>).

- 1 Go to your Today screen.
- 2 Press Phone/Send and select Dial Pad.
- **3** Use the keyboard keys or tap the onscreen Dial Pad to enter the number.



4 Press Phone/Send to dial.

Redialing a recently called number

To dial the last number you called: Go to your Today screen, and then press and hold **Phone/Send**.

To select from your most recently dialed numbers: Go to your Today screen, press Phone/Send , highlight the number or contact name you want to call, and then press Phone/Send to dial.



To select from a chronological list of calls: Go to your Today screen, press Phone/Send , and then select Call Log. Highlight the number you want to call, and then press either Call (left action key) or Phone/Send to dial.

TIP You can also access the Call Log and Dial Pad from the Today screen by pressing **Menu** (right action kev).

Other ways of making calls

Your smartphone offers several ways to make phone calls other than from the Today screen. Try them all and you'll discover which methods you prefer.

Dialing by company name

BEFORE YOU BEGIN Make sure your phone is on and that you're inside a coverage area (see <u>Turning your phone on</u>).

- 1 Press Start (a) and select Contacts.
- 2 Press Menu (right action key) and select View By > Company.
- 3 Press Phone/Send to go to your Today screen.
- **4** Using the keyboard, begin entering the first few letters of the company name.
- **5** Select the number you want to dial.

6 Press Phone/Send 🕶 to dial.

Dialing from a web page or message

Your smartphone recognizes most phone numbers that appear in web pages or in messages (text, email, or multimedia).



- Use the 5-way to highlight the phone number you want to dial in the web page or message.
- 2 Press Center to open the Phone dialog box, and then select Yes to dial.
 - TIP If you can't dial a phone number directly from a web page or a message, highlight the number, select **Edit** (right action key), and then select **Copy**. Open the Dial Pad, and then press and hold **Center** on the 5-way to paste. Press **Phone/Send** to dial.

Receiving calls

To answer calls, your phone must be on. This is different from having only the screen turned on (see <u>Turning your phone on</u>). When your phone is off, your calls go to voicemail.

TIP See a picture of the person calling you! Learn how to assign a caller ID picture in Adding a contact.

If music is playing when a call arrives, the smartphone rings softly. You can answer the phone as you normally would. The audio pauses during your call.

To answer a call, do one of the following:

- Press Phone/Send .
- Press Answer (left action key).
- If the headset is attached, press the headset button.

To ignore a call and send it to voicemail, press **Menu** (right action key) and select **Ignore**, or press **Power/End**

DID YOU KNOW? You can also ignore a call and send a text message. Press **Menu** (right action key) and select **Ignore with text message**.

To silence the ringer while your smartphone is ringing:

- Press the **Volume** button or any key on your smartphone except Phone/Send
 , Power/End
 , Alt (Alt), Start (2),
 OK (3), or the 5-way.

When you silence the ringer, you can either answer the call or let it ring through to voicemail.

Using voicemail

Setting up voicemail

- 1 Go to your Today screen.
- 2 Press and hold 1 on the keyboard or tap the Voicemail speed-dial button to dial your wireless service provider's voicemail system.

DID YOU KNOW? For some wireless service providers, the Voicemail speed-dial button may not be assigned to a number. If that's the case, you can edit the Voicemail speed-dial button to add the number to your service provider's voicemail system (see Editing a speed-dial button), or you can create a new speed-dial button with the number (see Creating a speed-dial button).

3 Follow the voice prompts to set up your voicemail.

Retrieving voicemail messages from the Today screen



When you have unretrieved voicemail messages, a Voicemail **a** icon appears at the top of your screen.

- 1 Go to your Today screen.
- 2 Press and hold 1 on the keyboard to dial your wireless service provider's voicemail system.
- 3 Enter your voicemail password using the keyboard, or press Extra Digits (left action key) if you defined this option (see <u>Creating a speed-dial</u> <u>button</u> for details).
- **4** Follow the voice prompts to listen to your messages.

- DID YOU KNOW? When a Voicemail icon appears at the top of the screen, you can tap this icon to retrieve your voicemail.
- TIP You can display onscreen voicemail playback controls; see <u>Creating a speed-dial</u> button.

Retrieving messages from a voicemail notification

NOTE Not all service plans support voicemail notification. Check with your wireless service provider for more information.

You can retrieve voicemail messages when you receive a notification, or you can dismiss the notification and retrieve the messages later.

 When you have a new voicemail message, a notification screen appears.



- To hear your message now, press Listen (left action key).
- To retrieve your message later, press **Dismiss** (right action key).

What can I do during a call?

Your smartphone offers many advanced telephone features, including call waiting, six-way conferencing, and call forwarding. These features depend on your service plan. Please contact your wireless service provider for more information.

When you make or receive a call, the active call info appears on your Today screen.



Caller's name and number

Current duration of call

During a call, you can do any of the following:

Navigate around the Today screen: Use Up ▲ and Down ▼ to move around or highlight items.

Put the call on hold: Press Hold (left action key). To take the call off hold, press Off Hold (left action key).

Use the built-in speakerphone: Select Speakerphone . To turn the speakerphone off, select Speakerphone . again.

Mute the microphone so you can't be heard: Select Mute . To turn the

microphone back on, select **Mute &** again.

Switch to another application: Press **Start** (*) and select the application.

DID YOU KNOW? When a call lasts longer than one minute, the screen dims. After two minutes, it dims more. Press any key, except Power/End, to light up the screen.

DID YOU KNOW? You can send and receive text messages during a call. This is a great way to stay connected with colleagues during a long call.

Ending a call

Do one of the following:

- Press Power/End
- Press the headset button (if the headset is attached and has a button on it).
 Some headsets do not have a button.

Switching applications during an active call

You can use many other applications on your smartphone while holding a phone conversation, including the organizer and text message features. You cannot,

however, make some data connections during an active call while connected to a GPRS network. If you're connected to a GPRS network, you cannot browse the web or send and receive email or MMS messages while on a voice call. If you're connected to a CDMA2000 (3G or HSDPA) network, you can perform simultaneous voice and data functions. How can you tell which kind of network you're connected to? See What are all those icons?

NOTE Some wireless service providers do not support simultaneous voice and data functions over an HSDPA network; check with your wireless service provider for information.

To open an application, see Opening and closing applications.

From any application, press **Phone/Send**to return to your Today screen.

Saving phone numbers

After you hang up a call, you can add the number of the person you were talking with to Contacts if it's not already in your list. If an incoming call uses caller ID

blocking, you do not see the Add Contact prompt.



- To create a new contact for this number, select Create New Contact
- To add this number to an existing contact, select Copy and Add, and then select a contact name.
- To decline adding the number, press
 Dismiss (left action key).
- To disable the Add Contact prompt, select **Don't show this again**.
 - TP If you disable the Add Contact prompt, you can turn it on again. From your Today screen, press Menu (right action key) and select Preferences > Phone Settings. On the Phone tab, check the After calls from numbers that are not in Contacts, ask if I want to add them box
 - You can also save contact info from other applications, such as Inbox.

If you don't add a number right away, follow these steps to add it later:

- **1** Go to the Call Log (see <u>Redialing a</u> recently called number).
- 2 Highlight the number you want to save.
- 3 Press and hold Center to open the shortcut menu, and then select Save to Contacts.
- 4 Enter the information for the entry.
- 5 Press OK 📵.

Making a second call

You can make a second call while your first call is still active:

- 1 Place your first call on hold by pressing Hold (left action key).
- 2 Dial a second number using any of the methods described in <u>Making calls from</u> <u>the Today screen</u>. If you're dialing by contact name or with the keyboard, you must first use the 5-way to select the Dial Lookup field.

When two calls are active, your Today screen includes two call status sections, each representing one of the calls.



Answering a second call (call waiting)

When you're on a call and you receive a second call, the call waiting notification appears if you have chosen to be notified (see <u>Setting call waiting notification</u>). You can do any of the following:

Send the new call to voicemail: Press Menu (right action key) and select Ignore.

Send the new caller a text message:

Press Menu (right action key) and select Ignore with text message. The second call is sent to voicemail. A new text message opens with the phone number of the caller entered in the To field.

Hang up the current call and answer the new call: Press Menu (right action key) and select Drop and Answer. You can also press Power/End to hang up the current call, and then choose to answer or ignore the new call

Place the current call on hold and answer the new call-

Press **Answer** (left action kev) or Phone/Send . After you answer the call:



- Press Swap (left action key) to move between callers by placing the current active call on hold and talking on the other line
- Make the calls a conference call. See. Making a conference call.

Making a conference call

IMPORTANT You can join up to 5 calls into a 6-way conference call. The number of calls you can join in conference depends on your service plan. Additional charges may apply, and minutes in your mobile account may be deducted for each call. Please contact your wireless service provider for more information

- 1 Answer a second call (see Answering a second call (call waiting)), or put the first call on hold and make a second call (see Making a second call).
- 2 Press Menu (right action key) and select Conference. This joins the two calls with you in a conference.



- **3** (Optional) Do one or more of the following:
 - Make more calls and join them into the conference call. The number of calls you can join in conference depends on your service plan.
 - Extract a caller from the conference call to talk with them privately by pressing Menu (right action key), selecting Extract, and then selecting the name. The extracted call becomes the active call.



- Swap between the conference call and the private call by pressing Swap (left action key).
- **4** When you're done, do one of the following:

- If you have extracted a call, press

 Power/End twice to hang up all
 calls or press Power/End once
 to hang up the active call.
- If you have not extracted a call, press
 Power/End once to hang up all calls

Forwarding calls

You can forward calls to another phone number. Please check with your wireless service provider about availability and pricing of forwarded calls; additional charges may apply.

When all calls are forwarded, the call forwarding \supseteq icon appears in the title bar.

BEFORE YOU BEGIN Make sure your phone is on and that you're inside a coverage area (see <u>Turning your phone on</u>).

- 1 Go to your Today screen.
- 2 Press Menu (right action key) and select Preferences > Phone Settings.
- 3 Select the Services tab, and then select Call Forwarding from the list.

4 Specify your call forwarding settings. Some of the settings may already be set by your wireless service provider to send your calls to voicemail.



5 Press OK 📵.

Defining speed-dial buttons

Your smartphone enables you to create both picture and text speed-dial buttons so that you can select a button on the Today screen to quickly dial a number.

Creating a speed-dial button

You can create up to 20 picture buttons and 50 text buttons.

- 1 Go to your Today screen.
- 2 Press Menu (right action key) and select New Speed Dial.
- 3 Do one of the following:
 - Select Link to contact, select the contact you want to link to this button, and then select the number you want to dial with this button.
 - Select Label and enter a name for this button, and then select Number and enter the phone number you want to dial with this button.



- 4 (Optional) Enter a Quick Key. When the Today screen is showing, you can press and hold the Quick Key to instantly dial this number.
 - Quick Keys can be letters or numbers, but you can't use both the letter and number on the same key. For example, the voicemail Quick Key is 1. The letter equivalent for that key is E, so you cannot assign E as a Quick Key to another speed-dial button.
- 5 If this button is linked to a contact entry with a picture, select either Text Speed Dial or Picture Speed Dial to indicate which type of button you want to create. If this button is not linked to a contact or the contact doesn't have a picture, the Picture Speed Dial option is not available.
 - TIP You can add a special ringtone to a contact associated with the speed-dial button. See Adding a contact.
- **6** (Optional) Select the **Advanced** tab and set any of the following options:

Extra Digits: Defines additional numbers to dial, such as a password or

extension. In addition to numbers, you can enter the following symbols: star (*) and pound (#). To enter a one-second pause, enter a comma (,).



Dial extra digits automatically: Dials predefined Extra Digits immediately after dialing the phone number. If you do not check this box, you must press **Extra Digits** (left action key) to dial these digits.

Show voice mail buttons: Displays the voicemail playback controls after you dial this speed-dial number. When this option is checked, you can enter numbers below each control to tailor the controls to your voicemail system.

Plays the previous message.



- Saves the current message.
- Plays the current message.
- Deletes the current message.
- Repeats the current message.
- Plays the next message.
- 7 Press OK 📵.

Editing a speed-dial button

- 1 Go to your Today screen.
- 2 Highlight the speed-dial button you want to edit.
- 3 Press and hold Center to open the shortcut menu, and then select Edit Speed Dial.
- 4 Make the desired changes.
- 5 Press OK .

TIP You can also edit a speed-dial button by pressing **Menu**, selecting **Speed Dial Options**, and then selecting the button you want to edit.

Deleting a speed-dial button

1 Go to your Today screen.

- 2 Highlight the speed-dial button you want to delete.
- 3 Press and hold Center to open the shortcut menu, and then select Edit Speed Dial.
- 4 Press **Delete** (right action key).
- **5** Select **Yes** to confirm the deletion.

Arranging your speed-dial buttons

- 1 Go to your Today screen.
- 2 Press Menu (right action key) and select Speed Dial Options.
- **3** Highlight the button you want to move.
- 4 Press Option (1) + Left (4) or Right (5) or Up (1) or Down (7) to move the button in that direction

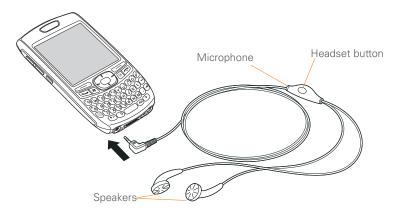
Using a phone headset

You can connect a phone headset for hands-free operation. You can use either the headset that came with your smartphone or a compatible third-party headset.

IMPORTANT If driving while using a smartphone is permitted where you are and you need to make a call, we recommend using a phone headset or a hands-free car kit (sold separately). If you

must use the wired headset while driving, place a speaker in only one ear. Leave the other ear free to hear outside noises. Make such a call only if it is legal to do so and you can do so safely.

Using a wired headset



The headset button is context-sensitive, and it performs various actions based on the situation. You can press the headset button to perform any of the following tasks:

- Answer an incoming call
- · Respond to call waiting
- Hang up a single active call or all calls on a conference call if there is no extracted call

CHAPTER

 Swap between calls if there is one active call and one call on hold

NOTE Your smartphone works with headsets that have a 2.5mm, 3-pin connector (look for two colored bands on the plug). When in doubt, ask the third-party headset manufacturer if the product is compatible with your smartphone. If you hear a headset buzz or poor microphone performance, your headset may be incompatible with your smartphone.

Connecting to a Bluetooth® hands-free device

Your smartphone is also compatible with many headsets and car kits (sold separately) enabled with Bluetooth® wireless technology version 1.1 or 1.2.

For a list of compatible hands-free devices with Bluetooth wireless technology, go to www.palm.com/treo800w-support.

After you set up a connection with a Bluetooth headset or hands-free car kit. you can communicate with that device whenever it is within range and the Bluetooth feature on your smartphone is turned on. The range varies greatly, depending on environmental factors. The maximum is about 9 meters (30 feet).

DID YOU KNOW? If you have both a compatible Bluetooth headset and a car kit, the one you connected to your smartphone last becomes the active device

- 1 If necessary, prepare the device with which you want to connect to accept a new connection. Check the device's documentation for details. Be sure to find out if the device has a predefined passkey that you need to enter on your smartphone in step 7.
- 2 Go to your Today screen and tap Bluetooth .
- 3 Select the **Mode** tab and check the **Turn** on Bluetooth box



4 Select the **Devices** tab, and then select Add new device.



5 Wait for your smartphone to search for devices and to display the device list.



- 6 Select the device you want to connect to, and then press Next (right action key).
- 7 Enter a passkey between 1 and 16 digits long, and then press Next (right action key).

IMPORTANT Some hands-free devices have a predefined passkey. If your hands-free device has a predefined passkey, you can find it in the documentation for that device. Other devices provide a screen where you enter a passkey that you make up. In either case, you must use the same passkey on both your smartphone and your hands-free device. We recommend that you use a passkey of 16 digits, where possible, to improve the security of your smartphone.



The longer the passkey, the more difficult it is for the passkey to be deciphered.

DID YOU KNOW? The Bluetooth icon on your Today screen indicates the status of the Bluetooth feature See <u>The Bluetooth status icon</u> for details.

- 8 If the passkey is not predefined, enter the same passkey on the other Bluetooth device, and then press **Finish** (right action key).
- 9 Check the Hands Free box, and then press Finish (right action key).

10 Press OK 📵

You can now communicate with this device whenever it is within range and the Bluetooth feature on your smartphone is turned on. The range varies greatly, depending on environmental factors. The maximum is about 9 meters (30 feet).

Using a Bluetooth hands-free device

To learn how to set up and connect to Bluetooth devices, see <u>Connecting to a Bluetooth® hands-free device</u>.

Here are tips for working with a Bluetooth hands-free device:

- To transfer a call from the handset to a Bluetooth hands-free device during a call, press Menu (right action key) and select Connect Bluetooth. To transfer the call back to the headset, press Menu (right action key) and select Cancel Bluetooth.
- To transfer a call from a wired headset to a Bluetooth headset or car kit that is within range and with which you've previously set up a partnership (Bluetooth headset or car kit required, sold separately), unplug the wired headset and press the button on the Bluetooth headset or car kit.
- To find out how to transfer your contacts from your smartphone to your car kit, go to www.palm.com/ treo800w-support.

DID YOU KNOW? If you're using a Bluetooth hands-free device and it is within range, your smartphone routes all calls to the hands-free device instead of to the earpiece on your smartphone. Bluetooth range is up to 9 meters (30 feet) in optimum environmental conditions.

Customizing phone settings

Selecting ringtones and display notices

You can set different tones for different types of incoming phone calls and notifications. You can download MP3, MIDI, AMR, WAV, and WMA ringtones directly to your smartphone (see Downloading files and images from a web page). You can also download ringtones to your computer and then email them to your phone.

- 1 Press **Start** and select **Settings**.
- 2 On the Personal tab, select **Sounds & Notifications** ().
- 3 Select the Notifications tab.

4 Select the Event list, and then select the type of call or notification for which you want to set the ringtone:

Phone: Known Caller: An incoming call from someone in your Contacts list or Speed Dial list.



Phone: Missed call: A call you did not answer.



Phone: Roaming: A call that comes in when you're outside your home mobile network.

Phone: Unknown Caller: An incoming call from someone identified by caller ID who is not in your Contacts list or Speed Dial list.

Phone: Voice mail: A new voicemail.

- 5 If you selected Known Caller, Roaming, or Unknown Caller, select the ring type and the ringtone. Select the Play icon to preview the ringtone sound.
- **6** If you selected Missed call or Voice mail, set the following options:
 - Check the Play Sound box if you want to have a sound played when the event occurs.

- If you checked the Play Sound box, then select the sound for the selected type of call. You can also check the Repeat box to have the sound repeat.
- (Optional) Select the Play icon to preview the sound.
- Check the Display message on screen box to have a message displayed when the event occurs.
- 7 Check the Vibrate when... boxes to turn the vibrate feature on/off based on the Ringer switch setting.
- **8** Repeat steps 4–7 to select ringtones for other types of calls.
- 9 Press OK 🐵.

DID YOU KNOW? You can record, preview, delete, and send sounds on your smartphone. You can also set sounds for messaging notifications and calendar reminders. See Selecting Sounds & Notifications.

Adjusting call and ringer volume



- Call volume: While a call is in progress, press Volume (on the side of your smartphone) to adjust the call volume.
- Ringer volume: When a call is not in progress and you are not playing music or a video, press Volume to adjust ringer volume.

Assigning a caller ID ringtone

- 1 Press **Start** and select **Contacts**.
- 2 Highlight the contact's name.
- 3 Press **Menu** (right action key) and select **Edit**.

- 4 Select Ring tone.
- **5** Select a tone for this contact entry.
- 6 Press OK (⊛).

Enabling TTY

You can enable your smartphone for use with a TTY/TDD device. A TTY (also known as a TDD or Text Telephone) is a telecommunications device that enables people who are deaf or hard of hearing, or who have speech or language disabilities, to communicate by telephone.

Your smartphone is compatible with select TTY devices. You can connect a TTY/TDD machine, headset, or hands-free kit to your smartphone through the headset jack while in TTY/TDD mode. Please check with the manufacturer of your TTY device for connectivity information. Be sure that the TTY device supports digital wireless transmission.

NOTE Not all wireless service providers support the TTY feature on your smartphone. Check with your wireless service provider for information.



BEFORE YOU BEGIN

- Make sure your smartphone is connected to a TTY/TDD machine using the headset jack. When you enable TTY, all audio modes are disabled on your smartphone, including holding the smartphone up to your ear and listening.
- Turn on your phone to access your Phone Settings. See <u>Turning your phone</u> on.
- 1 Press **Start** and select **Settings**.
- 2 On the Personal tab, select **Phone** &.



- **3** On the Phone tab, select the **TTY/TDD** list and then select either **On** or **Off**.
- 4 If an alert appears, press OK (18)
- 5 Press OK .

NOTE When TTY/TDD is on, a TTY/TDD is on

Adding contact numbers from new callers

By default, you are prompted to add contact entries for numbers that are not already in your Contacts list. You can turn this feature on or off.

- 1 Press Start and select Settings.
- 2 On the Personal tab, select **Phone** &.
- 3 On the Phone tab, check the After calls from numbers that are not in Contacts, ask if I want to add them box
- 4 Press OK 🐵.

Blocking calls

You can block (bar) incoming or outgoing calls

BEFORE YOU BEGIN You need to do the following:

 Make sure that call barring is supported by your service plan. Check with your wireless service provider for more information.

- Get a call barring password from your wireless service provider.
- Make sure your phone is on and that you're inside a coverage area (see Turning your phone on).
- 1 Go to your Today screen.
- 2 Press Menu (right action key) and select Preferences > Phone Settings.
- 3 Select the Services tab, and then select Call Barring from the list.



4 Select the Block incoming calls list, and then select one of the options:

Off: No incoming calls are blocked.

When roaming: All incoming calls are blocked when roaming.

All calls: All incoming calls are blocked.

Select the **Block outgoing calls** list and then select one of the options:

Off: No outgoing calls are blocked.

International: All outgoing international calls are blocked

International except to home country: All outgoing international calls are blocked except to the country where the phone is based.

All calls: All outgoing calls are blocked.

- 6 Press OK .
- 7 Enter the call barring password and press **Done** (right action key).

Setting caller ID

You can turn caller ID on or off.

BEFORE YOU BEGIN Make sure your phone is on and that you're inside a coverage area (see <u>Turning your phone on</u>).

- 1 Go to your Today screen.
- 2 Press Menu (right action key) and select Preferences > Phone Settings.

- <u>+</u> ч
- 3 Select the Services tab, and then select Caller ID from the list.
- 4 Select the appropriate option to provide your caller ID to Everyone or No one.



5 Press OK 📵.

Setting call waiting notification

You can choose to be notified when you receive a call while you are on a call. You can choose to accept the call or not. See Answering a second call (call waiting).

BEFORE YOU BEGIN Make sure your phone is on and that you're inside a coverage area (see <u>Turning your phone on</u>).

- 1 Go to your Today screen.
- 2 Press Menu (right action key) and select Preferences > Phone Settings.
- 3 Select the Services tab, and then select Call Waiting.
- 4 Select the appropriate option to receive a notification or not



5 Press OK 📵.

Manually selecting your wireless band

IMPORTANT The wireless band setting is preset for optimum performance. Do not change this setting unless instructed to do so by a representative from your wireless service provider.

BEFORE YOU BEGIN Make sure your phone is on and that you're inside a coverage area (see <u>Turning your phone on</u>).

- 1 Go to your Today screen.
- 2 Press Menu (right action key) and select Preferences > Phone Settings.
- 3 Select the Services tab, and then select Band Selection from the list.
- 4 Select the Select network type list, and then select one of the following:



Auto: Automatically selects a network.

CDMA2000: Connects only to CDMA2000 (3G or HSDPA) networks.

- 5 Select the Select your CDMA2000 Band list, and then select either Auto or one of the bands listed. The band options differ depending on your wireless service provider.
- 6 Press OK ⊚.

Enabling fixed dialing

Fixed dialing allows you to restrict your outgoing calls and messages to selected phone numbers included in your fixed dialing list. After the service is activated, you can call and send messages only to the phone numbers from the list.

The list is protected by a PIN2 code. If you enter an incorrect PIN2 more times than allowed by your wireless service provider, the SIM card locks. After the SIM card locks, you need the PUK2 (pin unblocking key) to unlock the SIM card. Contact your wireless service provider for more information and your PIN2 and PUK2.



BEFORE YOU BEGIN

- Make sure your phone is on and that you're inside a coverage area (see Turning your phone on).
- Get your PIN2 from your wireless service provider
- 1 Go to your Today screen.
- 2 Press Menu (right action key) and select Preferences > Phone Settings.
- 3 Select the Services tab, and then select Fixed Dialing.
- 4 Check the Enable fixed dialing box.



5 Enter your PIN2 and press **Done** (left action key).

- 6 Press Menu (right action key) to add, delete, or edit the phone numbers in the list.
- 7 Press OK (18).

Manually selecting your network settings

IMPORTANT The network settings are preset for optimum performance. Do not change these settings unless instructed to do so by a representative from your wireless service provider. The network settings options vary according to your wireless service provider.

BEFORE YOU BEGIN Make sure your phone is on and that you're inside a coverage area (see <u>Turning your phone on</u>).

- 1 Go to your Today screen.
- 2 Press Menu (right action key) and select Preferences > Phone Settings.
- 3 Select the Network tab.



4 To switch to another network, select Find Network and select an available network.

- 5 To change your preferred network, select Set Networks, check the box next to the networks you want, and then select your order of preference.
- **6** From the **Network Selection** list, select an option:

Automatic: The network connection is automatically made.

Manual: Network connections are manually made. If you are manually selecting a network, select a network from the list of available networks.

7 Press OK (19).



What are all those icons?

You can monitor the status of several items using icons at the top of your Today screen:



You have a voicemail message.

You have a new email message.

You have a new text or multimedia message.

No SIM card is inserted or software is unable to recognize the SIM

You have more than one of the conditions listed above.

Your phone is on. The bars display the signal strength. The stronger the signal, the more bars that appear. If you are outside a coverage area, no bars appear.

Your phone is off.

The SIM card is locked. You need to enter a PIN or a PUK to unlock the SIM card (see Locking the SIM card).

A voice call is in progress.

TTY/TDD is turned on.

GI

 \equiv

-2

3G

110∙

All calls are being forwarded.

You are in a roaming coverage area. Additional fees may apply for calls or data transmission.

Your phone is connected to a CDMA2000 (3G or HSDPA) network, but you are not actively transmitting data. You can still make or receive calls.

Your phone is on and a 3G CDMA2000 data connection is active. You can make and receive calls and transmit data simultaneously.



煰

 \times



Your phone is connected to a $\overline{\mathsf{H}}$ HSDPA CDMA2000 network, but you are not actively transmitting data. You can still make or receive calls

> **NOTE** In most cases, when your phone is connected to a CDMA2000 network (either 3G or HSDPA) but you are not actively transmitting data, the 3G icon appears. The H icon may appear when your phone is connected to a HSDPA CDMA2000 network, but you are not actively transmitting data

G.

Your phone is on and an HSDPA ij, CDMA2000 data connection is active. You can make and receive calls and transmit data simultaneously.

Your phone is connected to an EDGE network, but you are not actively transmitting data. You can still make or receive calls

Your phone is on and an EDGE if ₽, data connection is active. You can still make or receive calls but the data transmission is automatically interrupted.

Your phone is connected to a G GPRS network, but you are not actively transmitting data. You can still make or receive calls

> Your phone is on and a GPRS data connection is active. You can still make or receive calls but the data transmission is automatically interrupted.

ActiveSync synchronization is in progress.

Your smartphone is connected to a computer or network, or Windows Mobile Device Center synchronization is in progress.

A data connection is not available or your phone is off.

Your smartphone's battery is low.





Your smartphone's battery is charging.



Your smartphone is connected to a power outlet and the battery is fully charged.

Wireless Your phone is on. When you turn service off your phone, **Phone Off** provider appears instead.



The Bluetooth® wireless technology status indicator appears in gray when this feature is off, in blue when this feature is on, and in reverse blue when your smartphone is communicating with another Bluetooth device.



A call is in progress and your smartphone is connected to a Bluetooth headset or car kit.



You have a reminder. If the reminder is not displayed on your Today screen, tap the icon to open the reminder.



You have an alert from Microsoft. If the alert is not displayed on your Today screen, tap the icon to open the alert.



Synchronizing information

Synchronizing means that information that has been entered or updated in one place—your Palm® Treo™ 800w smartphone, your computer, or your corporate server—is automatically updated in the other. There's no need to enter information twice. Some types of synchronization can happen on an automated schedule, so you don't even have to think about it.

After you get into the habit of synchronizing regularly, you'll know what a powerful tool synchronization is for transferring, updating, and backing up large amounts of information on your smartphone.

Benefits

- Quickly enter and update information on your computer and your smartphone
- · Protect your information

 Send photos and videos to your smartphone from your desktop computer

In this chapter

Synchronization overview
How do I synchronize?7
What can I synchronize?
Setting up your computer for synchronization
Synchronizing using the sync cable
Setting up wireless synchronization
Other ways to synchronize
Setting synchronization options

Synchronization overview

This chapter discusses using desktop sync software and other methods to synchronize your smartphone and your computer.

When you synchronize, info you enter on your smartphone, your computer, or your corporate server is automatically updated in the other location. There's no need to enter the info twice. This is true whether you sync with your computer using desktop synchronization software (see Setting up your computer for synchronization) or wirelessly with your company's Exchange server using Microsoft Exchange ActiveSync (see Setting up wireless synchronization).

How do I synchronize?

There are a number of ways to make synchronization occur. You can install desktop sync software on your computer to synchronize in one of several ways, or you may be able to synchronize wirelessly with an Exchange server. You can also maximize your sync options and sync with both an Exchange server and desktop sync software to maximize your sync options.

Synchronizing with desktop sync software

BEFORE YOU BEGIN Install the software from the Windows Mobile Getting Started CD, which came with your smartphone. You must install this software even if you have already installed a previous version of desktop sync software. See Installing. ActiveSync desktop software: Windows XP or Installing Windows Mobile Device. Center: Windows Vista for instructions.

CHAPTER

After you install desktop sync software, you can synchronize in any of the following wavs:

- By connecting your smartphone to your computer using the sync cable (see Synchronizing using the sync cable)
- By connecting your smartphone to your computer using Bluetooth® wireless technology (see Synchronizing over a Bluetooth connection)
- By connecting your smartphone to your computer using the infrared (IR) ports (see Synchronizing over an infrared connection)

If you have a Windows XP computer: The desktop sync software is called ActiveSync® desktop software.

If you have a Windows Vista computer: The desktop sync software is called Windows Mobile Device Center. The sync application on your smartphone is called ActiveSvnc.

Synchronizing wirelessly with the server

You can set up your smartphone to synchronize email and other information wirelessly with Microsoft Exchange Server

2003 or Exchange Server 2007 using Microsoft Exchange ActiveSync (see Setting up wireless synchronization). If you choose this method, synchronization takes place automatically after setup. You do not need to install the software from the Windows Mobile Getting Started CD.

NOTE We recommend that you install the desktop sync software from the CD even if you synchronize wirelessly with the server. You need the desktop sync software to synchronize pictures, videos, music files, and other info directly with your computer.

What can I synchronize?

If you have Microsoft Office Outlook® 2002 or later installed on your computer, by default, the following information is synchronized when you synchronize using either desktop sync software or Microsoft Exchange ActiveSync:

🖭 .Contacts 📺 Calendar

📤 E-mail 🗹 Tasks

You can, however, customize sync settings to suit your needs and sync only some of these applications.

If you set up synchronization with your computer using the desktop sync software, information in the Favorites application is synchronized by default as well. You can also change settings to synchronize Word, Excel, PowerPoint, and PDF files, as well as pictures, music, videos, and other types of files (see Changing which applications sync).

DID YOU KNOW? Synchronizing Favorites gives you an easy way to get favorites from the web browser on your computer into the web browser on your smartphone. Just add them to the folder called Mobile Favorites, which shows up in your computer's browser. When you sync, they become available on your smartphone as well. Backup copies of any favorites that you add on the smartphone browser are also stored in the Mobile Favorites folder.

IMPORTANT To synchronize Calendar, Contacts, Inbox (email), and Tasks, you must have Outlook 2002 or later installed on your computer. If you want to synchronize pictures, music, and videos, you need to have Windows Media Player 10 or later installed on your computer.

- If you don't already have Outlook or Windows Media Player installed on your computer, you can install them from the Windows Mobile Getting Started CD. Insert the CD into your computer's CD drive, select Add Programs (Windows XP) or Bonus Software (Windows Vista), and then select Windows Media Player or the link to download a trial version of Outlook 2007.
- TIP If you want to synchronize with a personal information manager (PIM) other than Microsoft Office Outlook, you must install a third-party solution. Contact the PIM's vendor to learn if software is available for your smartphone

This table lists the types of info you can synchronize and the methods to use.

Info type	Method	Where to learn more
Outlook Contacts, Calendar, Tasks	Desktop sync software (sync with computer) or Exchange ActiveSync (direct sync with server)	Setting up your computer for synchronization or Setting up wireless synchronization
Outlook Email	Desktop sync software or Exchange ActiveSync	Setting up your computer for synchronization or Setting up wireless synchronization
Word, Excel, PowerPoint, PDF files	Desktop sync software	Setting up your computer for synchronization Synchronizing your Microsoft Office files Changing which applications sync
Music and video files	Desktop sync software and Windows Media Player	Setting up your computer for synchronization Changing which applications sync Transferring media files to your smartphone
Pictures	Windows XP: Desktop sync software Windows Vista: Desktop sync software and Windows Media Player	Setting up your computer for synchronization Changing which applications sync Transferring media files to your smartphone (Windows Vista)

Info type	Method	Where to learn more
Outlook Notes	Desktop sync software	Setting up your computer for synchronization
		Changing which applications sync
Files to be transferred to an	Desktop sync software	Setting up your computer for synchronization
expansion card		Changing which applications sync

Setting up your computer for synchronization

Before you can synchronize, you need to install your desktop sync software and connect the sync cable to your computer. Even if you already have desktop sync software installed on your computer, you must install the software that came with your smartphone on the Windows Mobile Getting Started CD.

System requirements

Your computer must meet the following minimum system requirements:

- Windows XP Service Pack 2 or Windows Vista (later versions may also be supported)
- 32MB of available memory (RAM)
- 170MB of free hard disk space
- CD drive
- Available USB port
- USB sync cable (included with your smartphone)
- Adobe Flash Player (required to run the installation program)

CHAPTER

TIP If you do not have Adobe Flash Player on your computer, you can download it for free from www.adobe.com.

Installing ActiveSync desktop software: Windows XP

If you have a Windows XP computer, the desktop sync software is called ActiveSync desktop software. The Windows Mobile Getting Started CD recognizes that you have a Windows XP computer and automatically directs you to install ActiveSync desktop software. On your smartphone, the sync application is called ActiveSync.

BEFORE YOU BEGIN If you are installing the software on a computer at work, make sure your company allows you to install new software. Contact your company's IT department for help.

1 Close any applications that are currently running on your computer, including those running in the background. Your computer must have all its resources available to install the software

- 2 Insert the Windows Mobile Getting Started CD into the CD drive on your computer.
- **3** Follow the installation instructions that appear on both your computer and your smartphone.

During installation, you connect your smartphone to your computer and sync for the first time. Be sure to watch what's happening on both your computer and your smartphone. For more info, see Connecting your smartphone to your computer and Synchronization.

- TIP During software installation, you can select an option to synchronize email, contacts, calendar events, and tasks directly with Microsoft Exchange Server 2003 or 2007. If you choose this option, you are prompted to enter your mail server address and domain name and your Exchange server account username and password.
- pip you know? You can also install additional software from the Windows Mobile Getting Started CD (see Installing bonus software from the CD)

Installing Windows Mobile Device Center: Windows Vista

If you have a Windows Vista computer, the desktop sync software is called Windows Mobile Device Center. The Windows Mobile Getting Started CD recognizes that you have a Windows Vista computer and automatically directs you to install Windows Mobile Device Center. On your smartphone, the sync application is called ActiveSync.

BEFORE YOU BEGIN If you are installing the software on a computer at work, make sure your company allows you to install new software—for example, that you have Administrator privileges. Contact your company's IT department for help.

- 1 Close any applications that are currently running on your computer, including those running in the background. Your computer must have all its resources available to install the software.
- 2 Insert the Windows Mobile Getting Started CD into the CD drive on your computer.
- 3 If prompted, click **RunStart.exe**.

- 4 Click Continue.
- 5 Select your language and click **Next**.
- 6 Select Setup and Installation.
- 7 Make sure the Windows Mobile Device Center box is checked, and click Install.
- 8 Follow the installation instructions that appear on both your computer and your smartphone.

During installation, you connect your smartphone to your computer and sync for the first time. Be sure to watch what's happening on both your computer and your smartphone. For more info, see Connecting your smartphone to your computer and Synchronization.

Using the desktop sync software

After you install the desktop sync software, synchronization happens automatically anytime you connect your smartphone to your computer, as described in the next section. You can also open the desktop

CHAPTER

sync software window on your computer to perform the following tasks:

- Install applications from your computer to your smartphone (see <u>Installing</u> <u>applications from your computer</u>) or to an expansion card inserted into the expansion card slot on your smartphone (see <u>Installing applications onto an</u> expansion card)
- · Change which applications synchronize
- In ActiveSync desktop software on a Windows XP computer, enter settings to synchronize wirelessly with Microsoft Exchange Server 2003 or 2007

DID YOU KNOW? You can also change which applications synchronize (see <u>Changing which applications sync</u>) and enter settings to synchronize wirelessly (see <u>Setting up wireless synchronization</u>) in the ActiveSync app on your smartphone. Whether you enter changes on your smartphone or on your computer, the changes are transferred to the other location the next time you synchronize.

To open the desktop sync software, do one of the following:

Windows XP: To open the ActiveSync desktop software window, double-click the ActiveSync (a) icon in the taskbar in the lower-right corner of your computer screen.

- TIP If the ActiveSync icon does not appear in the taskbar, go to **Start**, navigate to **Programs**, and then select **Microsoft ActiveSync** to open the ActiveSync window.
- The You can enter a setting to have the ActiveSync window open automatically when you connect your computer and your smartphone. In the ActiveSync window, select File > Connection Settings, and then check the Open ActiveSync when my device connects box.

Windows Vista: To open Windows Mobile Device Center, click Start > All Programs > Windows Mobile Device Center.

Desktop software installation also creates a folder for your smartphone on your computer. When your smartphone is connected to your computer, opening My Computer or Windows Explorer (Windows XP) or Computer (Windows Vista) displays an icon representing your smartphone. Double-clicking this icon displays folders containing items you synchronized, such as music files, pictures, and videos.

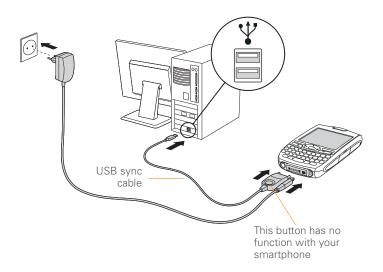
Connecting your smartphone to your computer

NOTE If you're transferring info from a previous Windows Mobile® device or from a Palm OS® device, you can learn more about how to move content, such as pictures, music, and files, to your smartphone by going to www.palm.com/treo800w-support.

- 1 If international adapters are included in your smartphone package, prepare the AC charger by connecting the adapter that fits the wall outlet you're going to use.
- 2 Plug the AC charger into a wall outlet.
- 3 Plug the USB sync cable into an available USB port or into a powered USB hub on your computer.

- TIP For best performance, plug your sync cable directly into a USB port on your computer. If your computer has USB ports on both the front and back, we suggest using the back port. If you use a USB hub, make sure it's a powered hub.
- 4 Connect the sync cable to your smartphone by inserting it into the two sockets to the left on the bottom of the smartphone.
- 5 Connect the charger cable to the remaining socket on the bottom of your smartphone.

DID YOU KNOW? The AC charger contains an indicator light that glows when the charger is connected to a power source.



Synchronizing using the sync cable

Every time you connect your smartphone to your computer, the desktop sync software automatically turns on and checks

whether changes you made on the computer or on the smartphone need to be synchronized.

 Connect your smartphone to your computer (see <u>Connecting your</u> smartphone to your computer).



2 Check for synchronization progress:

Windows XP: Look for the animated ActiveSync → icon at the top of your smartphone screen and the ActiveSync ○ icon in the taskbar on your computer.

Windows Vista: Look for the animated **connection** icon at the top of your smartphone screen.

 If you don't see the correct icon, make sure the desktop sync software that

- came with your smartphone is running on your computer.
- If you have any problems synchronizing, see <u>Synchronization</u> for troubleshooting suggestions.

The We recommend that you install the backup and restore app from the Windows Mobile Getting Started CD. A backup and restore app preserves your data and settings if your smartphone is ever lost or stolen, and it protects your data during a hard reset.

Setting up wireless synchronization

Does your company use Microsoft Outlook as its email solution? Does your company also use Microsoft Exchange Server 2003 or 2007 as its email server? If so, you may be able to wirelessly synchronize the email and other Outlook info on your smartphone and the same info stored on the Exchange server using Microsoft Exchange ActiveSync.

CHAPTER

If you are using Exchange Server 2007 or Exchange Server 2003 that has been upgraded to Service Pack 2, you may be able to take advantage of the additional features of Direct Push Technology, Direct Push Technology is a two-way wireless delivery method that keeps your Outlook information always up-to-date and provides more efficient communication between the server and your smartphone. It includes features like Global Address List: Tasks Over The Air (OTA); and IP-based push updating of Calendar, Messaging, and Inhox (email)

DID YOU KNOW? Because your desktop copy of Outlook also syncs with the server, whatever is synchronized to the server from your smartphone also shows up in Outlook; and whatever you enter or change in Outlook on your computer syncs to the server and then shows up on your smartphone.

BEFORE YOU BEGIN To synchronize wirelessly, you need to set up an Exchange Server account. Work with your system administrator to gather the following info,

and then follow the steps in this section to set up an account:

- Mail server address and domain name.
- The username and password you use to access your corporate mail server.
- Security connection: Does your server use an encrypted (SSL) connection?
- TIP If you installed ActiveSvnc desktop software on a Windows XP computer, you may have already set up your smartphone to synchronize wirelessly with the server. To check, press Start, select Programs, and then select ActiveSvnc. Press Menu (right action key). If Configure Server appears instead of Add Server Source, wireless sync is already set up, and you can skip this procedure.
- 1 Press Start and select Programs.
- 2 Select ActiveSvnc (3).
- 3 Press Menu (right action kev) and select Add Server Source
- 4 Enter the server address. Check the This server requires an encrypted

(SSL) connection box if your server uses an encrypted connection.



- **5** Press **Next** (right action key).
- 6 Enter the username and password you use to access your corporate mail server, and enter the Exchange server domain.



NOTE You can't see your password as you enter it, so be careful. Be sure Caps Lock and Option Lock are not on unless you need them. For info on how to enter characters, see Entering lowercase and Uppercase letters and Entering numbers, punctuation, and symbols.

THE The Exchange server settings are casesensitive. Be sure to enter uppercase and lowercase letters properly.

7 Check the **Save password** box.

TIP Ask your system administrator if it is OK to store your corporate email password on your smartphone (for increased security, you may need to enter your password each time you access your email). If it is not OK, don't check the **Save password** box; you must synchronize manually (see Initiating a wireless sync manually).

- **8** (Optional) Select **Advanced** to set the rules for fixing sync conflicts.
- **9** Press **Next** (right action key) and check the boxes for the types of

information you want to synchronize with the Exchange server.



- 10 (Optional) Highlight an item and select Settings to change the synchronization settings for that type of information. Settings are not available for all items.
 - TIP To automatically download more of an incoming email message than the default setting, select **E-mail** in step 9 and select a higher number from the **Download size limit** list. If you don't increase this setting, you can manually download the rest of the message at your convenience.
- 11 Press Finish (right action key). Synchronization with your Exchange server begins automatically. A status

bar appears onscreen indicating sync progress.

You can set a schedule for synchronization to take place anytime info is updated on either your smartphone or the server or at certain intervals (see <u>Setting the synchronization schedule</u>), or allow synchronization to take place only when you initiate it manually (see <u>Initiating a</u> wireless sync manually).

Setting the synchronization schedule

You can set a synchronization schedule in either of the following situations:

If you use Microsoft Exchange Server 2007 or Microsoft Exchange Server 2003 with Service Pack 2: By default, wireless sync takes place anytime info is updated on either your smartphone or the server using Direct Push Technology. To save battery life, however, you can set synchronization to take place at intervals that you specify.

If you use Microsoft Exchange Server 2003 that is not upgraded to Service Pack 2: By default, wireless sync does not take place automatically. Set a

synchronization schedule to have sync take place either anytime info is updated on your smartphone or the server, or at certain intervals.

- 1 Press Start and select Programs.
- 2 Select ActiveSync (3).
- 3 Press **Menu** (right action key) and select **Schedule**.



4 Set any of the following options:

Peak times: Sets the frequency for high-traffic time periods such as when you are at work or when email volume is high.

Off-peak times: Sets the frequency for low-traffic time periods such as late at night.

Use above settings when roaming:

Sets the frequency while you are roaming outside your wireless service provider's network. You should keep this box checked to ensure that wireless sync works properly.

Send/receive when I click Send: Sets whether items are sent as soon as you select Send in the Inbox application, or whether they are held until the next synchronization.

5 Press OK 📵.

Initiating a wireless sync manually

If you want to control exactly when a wireless sync takes place, or if it is not OK to store your corporate email password on your smartphone, you can initiate sync manually.

- 1 To set up manual sync, follow the preceding procedure, <u>Setting the</u> <u>synchronization schedule</u>. In the Peak times and Off-peak times lists, select <u>Manual</u>.
- 2 To initiate a manual sync, press Start and select Programs.



- 3 Select ActiveSync 🕲.
- 4 Press **Sync** (left action key).

Other ways to synchronize

Synchronizing over a Bluetooth connection

You can synchronize your computer and smartphone using Bluetooth wireless technology.

BEFORE YOU BEGIN Do the following:

- Make sure your computer is equipped with Bluetooth wireless technology.
- If you have not already done so, install
 the ActiveSync Plug-in for Bluetooth
 wireless technology from the Windows
 Mobile Getting Started CD. The plug-in
 is installed on your computer and is
 needed to synchronize over a Bluetooth
 connection with your smartphone.

TIP To install the plug-in for Bluetooth technology, insert the Windows Mobile Getting Started CD into your computer's CD drive, and select **Add Programs** (Windows XP) or **Bonus Software** (Windows Vista). Select the plug-in option and follow the onscreen instructions.

1 Do one of the following:

Windows XP: On your computer, right-click the ActiveSync icon in the taskbar in the lower-right corner of the screen, and select Connection Settings.

Windows Vista: Click Start > All Programs > Windows Mobile Device Center. Select Connect without setting up your device, and then select Connection settings.

- Check the Allow connections for one of the following box, and then select Bluetooth
- 3 On your smartphone, press **Start** and select **Settings**.
- 4 Select the **Connections** tab, and then select **Bluetooth** ?.

- 5 Select the Mode tab and check the Turn on Bluetooth box.
- 6 Press Start and select Programs.
- 7 Select ActiveSync (3).
- 8 Press Menu (right action key) and select Connect via Bluetooth.
- 9 If this is the first time you're making a Bluetooth connection to this computer, follow the onscreen prompts to set up a Bluetooth partnership with this computer. See Connecting to devices with Bluetooth wireless technology for more information on partnerships.
- 10 Select Sync.
- 11 When synchronization has finished, press **Menu** (right action key) and select **Disconnect Bluetooth**.

Synchronizing over an infrared connection

If your computer has an IR (infrared) port, you can synchronize with your computer wirelessly using the IR port on your smartphone.

BEFORE YOU BEGIN

- Make sure your computer is equipped with an IR port.
- Turn on your smartphone's IR functionality (see <u>Beaming information</u>).
- Set up your computer to receive infrared beams. See ActiveSync Help on your computer for details.
- 2 Point the IR port directly on your smartphone at your computer's IR port.
- On your smartphone, press **Start** and select **Programs**.
- 4 Select ActiveSync 🕲.
- 5 Press Menu (right action key) and select Connect via IR.
- 6 Select Sync.

Synchronizing with multiple computers

You can set up your smartphone to synchronize with up to two computers as well as with Exchange Server 2003 or 2007. When synchronizing with multiple computers, the items that you synchronize appear on all the computers.

For example, if you set up to sync your smartphone with two computers named

C1 and C2, when you sync Contacts and Calendar on your smartphone with both computers, you get the following results:

- The contacts and calendar appointments that were on C1 are now also on C2.
- The contacts and calendar appointments that were on C2 are now also on C1.
- The contacts and calendar appointments from both computers are on your smartphone.

NOTE Microsoft[®] Office Outlook[®] E-mail can synchronize with only one computer.

Setting synchronization options

Changing which applications sync

You must select sync options if you want to synchronize notes, pictures, and other types of files.

- 1 Press Start and select Programs.
- 2 Select ActiveSync 🕲.
- **3** Press **Menu** (right action key) and select **Options**.



- 4 Do any of the following:
 - Check the box next to any items you want to synchronize. If you cannot check a box, you might have to uncheck a box for the same information type elsewhere in the list.
 - Uncheck the box next to any items you want to stop synchronizing.
 - Select an item and then select
 Settings to customize the settings for that item. Settings are not available for all items

THE For detailed information on synchronizing Word documents, Excel spreadsheets, and PowerPoint presentations, see <u>Synchronizing your Microsoft Office files</u>. For detailed information on synchronizing pictures, videos, and music files, see <u>Synchronizing your media files</u>.

Stopping synchronization

If you ever need to manually stop synchronization, follow these steps:

- Press **Start** and select **Programs**.
- Select ActiveSync 👀.
- 3 Press **Stop** (left action key).

TIP To end the sync relationship between you smartphone and a computer so that items are no longer synchronized with that computer, select the computer name on the ActiveSync screen, and then select **Delete**.





Your email

You already know how efficient email is for staying in touch. Now your Palm® Treo™ 800w smartphone brings you a new level of convenience: email on the go. Enjoy the ease and speed of communicating with friends, family, and colleagues anywhere you can access your wireless service provider's data network.

You can send photos to your friends and family, or create Microsoft Word or Excel files and send them to your colleagues. You can also receive attachments to view and edit at your convenience.

Benefits

- Receive photos, sound files, Word and Excel files, and more
- Attach and send files of almost any type
- Save messages from your computer to view at a convenient time

In this chapter

Setting up email	93
Sending and receiving messages	101
Working with email messages	106
Working with meeting invitations	116

Setting up email

You can use the Inbox application to send and receive email. Before you use your smartphone to send or receive messages, consult your wireless service provider for pricing and availability of email services and data rate plans.

BEFORE YOU BEGIN

 Make sure your phone is on and you're inside a coverage area before you send or receive messages. If you want delivery of Outlook email using Direct Push Technology, make sure that your IT organization uses Exchange Server 2007 or Exchange Server 2003 with Service Pack 2

Entering settings for an email account

DID YOU KNOW? You can enter settings for more than one email account; and you can use different email setup applications on your smartphone to enter settings for different accounts, depending on which app best meets your needs.

Email account type	Type of email you can access	How to set up
POP/IMAP	You can obtain email from an ISP or Internet email account such as EarthLink, or from a small business or corporate Internet email account.	See Setting up a POP/IMAP account in the Inbox application: Common email providers or Setting up a POP/IMAP account in the Inbox application: Other email providers.

Email account type	Type of email you can access	How to set up
Microsoft Exchange server	You can retrieve corporate email using a Microsoft Exchange server. You can access email wirelessly if your company is using Microsoft Exchange ActiveSync®.	See Setting up wireless synchronization. You may need to check with your IT organization to ensure that Exchange ActiveSync® is supported and to obtain the configuration settings.
Free web-based email	You can access mail from Yahoo! and other free web-based systems.	Access the email website directly using your smartphone's web browser.

Setting up a POP/IMAP account in the Inbox application: Common email providers

Follow this procedure if you have a common email provider such as AOL, EarthLink, or Yahoo!. If you are setting up the Inbox application to work with your corporate email account, or you have a less-common email provider, see <u>Setting up a POP/IMAP account in the Inbox application</u>: Other email providers.

BEFORE YOU BEGIN Ask your email provider or system administrator for your account username and password if you don't know them

- 1 Go to your Today screen.
- 2 Press E-mail (left action key).
- 3 Select New E-mail Account.
- 4 Enter the email address that you want to set up. Check the box to have the setup process get your account settings from the Internet.



- **5** Press **Next** (right action key).
- 6 If the setup process finds your account settings, press Next (right action key).
 - If the setup process does not find your account settings, see <u>Setting up a POP/IMAP account in the Inbox application:</u>
 <u>Other email providers</u> and continue with step 7 of that procedure.
- 7 Enter your name and, if you want, change your account display name to something meaningful. For example, if this is your work email account, you can change the display name to "Work" or your company's name.



- 8 Press **Next** (right action key).
- **9** Enter your account username and password.
- 10 If you want your password entered automatically, check the Save password box. If you want to enter your password each time you access this account, do not check this box.

DID YOU KNOW? Checking the **Save password** box makes it easier to check your email, because you don't have to enter your password each time. Leaving the box unchecked keeps your email more secure, because no one can download messages without entering your password.

11 Press **Next** (right action key).

12 (Optional) Select either of the following:



Automatic Send/Receive: Change the time interval for automatically downloading email, from every 5 minutes to once a day. If you do not want to automatically download messages, select **Manually**.

Review all download options: Select this option to change download settings; see <u>Changing email download settings</u> for information.

13 Press Finish (right action key). If prompted, select OK to download messages for this account now.

Setting up a POP/IMAP account in the Inbox application: Other email providers

You can set up an account in the Inbox application to send and receive email messages using an email account that you have with an Internet service provider (ISP), an email account that you access using a VPN server connection (such as a work account; see Connecting to a VPN), or any other IMAP or POP email account.

BEFORE YOU BEGIN Work with your email provider or system administrator to gather the following info:

- Account type (POP3 or IMAP)
- · Mail server name for receiving mail
- Your username and password
- · Any special security requirements
- 1 Go to your Today screen.
- 2 Press **E-mail** (left action key).
- 3 Select New E-mail Account.
- 4 Enter the email address that you want to set up. Check the box if you want the setup process to try to get your account settings from the Internet.



- **5** Press **Next** (right action key).
- 6 If you did not check the box in step 4 or the setup process does not find account settings, press Next (right action key).

If you did check the box and the account setup process finds your account settings, go to Setting up a POP/IMAP account in the Inbox application:

Common email providers and continue with step 7 of that procedure.

7 If prompted, select either of the following as your email provider:



Internet e-mail: Select this option if you access email from any type of email account except a corporate account that uses an Exchange mail server.

Exchange server: Select this option if you access email from a corporate email account using an Exchange server

- 8 Press **Next** (right action key).
- **9** Enter your name and, if you want, change your account display name to something meaningful. For example, if this is your work email account, you can change the display name to "Work" or your company's name.



- **10** Press **Next** (right action key).
- **11** Enter the name of the incoming mail server.



- 12 Select the **Account type** list, and then select **POP3** or **IMAP**.
- **13** Press **Next** (right action key).

- 14 Enter your account username and password.
- 15 If you want your password entered automatically, check the **Save** password box. If you want to enter your password each time you access this account. do not check this box.
 - TIP For a corporate email account, ask your system administrator if it is OK to store your corporate email password on your smartphone (for increased security, you may need to enter your password each time you access your email). If it is not OK, don't check the **Save password** box.
- 16 Press Next (right action key).
- 17 If you receive an alert that your wireless service provider has already customized the outgoing mail server settings, press OK (a) to close the alert, and then press Next (right action key) on the outgoing mail server settings screen. Do not enter or change anything on the screen.

If you do not receive an alert, go to Entering outgoing server settings.

- TIP If you do not receive an alert, and if your incoming mail requires SSL, you set that option with the outgoing server settings. See Entering outgoing server settings and check the Require SSL for Incoming e-mail box on the Advanced Server Settings screen.
- 18 (Optional) Select either of the following:



Automatic Send/Receive: Change the time interval for automatically downloading email, from every 5 minutes to once a day. If you do not want to automatically download messages, select **Manually**.

- **Review all download settings:** Select this option to change download settings; see <u>Changing email download settings</u> for information.
- **19** Press **Finish** (right action key). If prompted, select **OK** to download messages for this account now.
 - DID YOU KNOW? On the Accounts tab in Messaging Options, an asterisk appears next to the accounts you create.
 - TO delete an email account or to edit account settings—for example, if you need to change the name of the outgoing mail server—press Menu (right action key) and select Tools > Options. To delete an account, highlight the account you want, press and hold Center on the 5-way, and then select Delete. (To delete an Outlook Email account, use the ActiveSync application, not the Inbox application.) To edit an account, select the account and go through the screens to change the settings you want to edit.

Entering outgoing server settings

If, during account setup, you do not receive an alert saying that your wireless service provider has set the outgoing mail options, you need to manually enter these settings. **BEFORE YOU BEGIN** Work with your email provider or system administrator to gather the following info:

- Mail server name for sending mail
- · Any special security requirements
- 1 On the screen for entering outgoing mail settings, select the correct settings for the following:



Outgoing (SMTP) mail server: Enter the server name.

Outgoing server requires authentication: Check the box if your outgoing mail server requires authentication.

Use the same user name and password for sending e-mail: Check

the box if the server requires you to use your account username and password when sending email.

2 Select Advanced Server Settings, and then select the correct settings for either of the following:



Require SSL for Incoming e-mail:

Check the box if your account requires SSL for incoming messages.

Require SSL for Outgoing e-mail: Check the box if your account requires SSL for outgoing messages.

Network connection: Select the type of connection to use for sending and receiving email.

- 3 Select **Done** (left action key). On the outgoing mail server screen, press **Next** (right action key).
- 4 (Optional) Select either of the following:



Automatic Send/Receive: Change the time interval for automatically downloading email, from every 5 minutes to once a day. If you do not want to automatically download messages, select **Manually**.

Review all download settings: Select this option to change download settings; see <u>Changing email download settings</u> for information.

5 Press Finish (right action key). If prompted, select OK to download messages for this account now.

Sending and receiving messages

Selecting which email account to use

If you set up more than one email account on your smartphone (see <u>Setting up email</u>), you can select the account you want to use to view or send messages in one of two ways:

- By default, when you open the Inbox application, a list of all of your email accounts appears. Select the account you want.
- If you turn off the option to display the list of accounts (see <u>Customizing your</u> <u>email settings</u>), when you open the Inbox application, the last account you were using is displayed. Press **Left** ◀ to cycle through your accounts until the name of the account you want appears in the title bar.

TIP Also press **Left** to switch to a different account after you are finished working in the first account you selected.

Creating and sending an email message

- 1 Go to your Today screen.
- 2 Press **E-mail** (left action key).

DID YOU KNOW? You can also access the Inbox application from the Start menu.

- **3** Select the account you want to use to send a message.
- 4 Press Menu (right action key) and select New.
- **5** Enter the recipient's email address. Here are some shortcuts:



 If the recipient's name and email address are in your Contacts list, enter the first few letters of the recipient's first name, last name, or

- email address, and then select the recipient's name.
- If the recipient's name is in an online address book, you can find the name and add it. See <u>Using an online</u> address book.

DID YOU KNOW? When addressing a message, you can enter the contact's first and last initials separated by a space.

TIP To address a message to multiple recipients, separate the addresses by pressing **Enter** or entering a semicolon (;).

- **6** Select **Subject** and enter a title for the message.
- 7 Press Down v to go to the body of the message. Enter your message, or press Menu (right action key), select My Text, and then select a predefined phrase you want to insert.
- 8 (Optional) To attach an item to the message, press Menu (right action key) and select Insert. Select the type of item you want to attach, and then select the file or record a voice note.

- TP You can send an email message with a file attached from directly within other applications on your smartphone; see <u>Sendingemail messages from within another application</u>.
- 9 (Optional) Press **Menu** (right action key) and do one or both of the following:
 - Select **Spell Check**. When the spell check is complete, press **OK** .
 - Select Message Options. Select the Priority list, select a priority setting for the message, and then press OK
- 10 Press Send (left action key).
 - TP To save memory on your smartphone, turn off the option to save sent messages in the Saved folder. In the Inbox, press Menu (right action key) and select Tools > Options. Select the Message tab, and then uncheck the Keep copies of sent items in Sent folder box.

Receiving email messages

How you receive email messages depends on the type of account you are using and how you synchronize:

- If you synchronize wirelessly with your Exchange server using Microsoft Exchange ActiveSync, new email messages are sent to your smartphone when they appear on the server, according to the schedule you set up (see Setting the synchronization schedule), or when you manually initiate a sync (see Initiating a wireless sync manually.
- The If you sync email with Microsoft Exchange Server 2003 or 2007, you can synchronize messages in subfolders you create. In the Inbox, press Menu (right action key) and select Tools > Manage Folders. Folders containing subfolders display a +. Select the + to view the subfolders. Check the box to the left of any subfolder you want to sync.
- TIP If you synchronize email with Microsoft Exchange Server 2007, and you receive a message containing a link to a document on SharePoint or an internal file server, you can view the document by selecting the link.
- If you use desktop sync software to synchronize your smartphone with your computer, messages in Outlook on your computer are transferred to your smartphone when you connect your

- computer and your smartphone (see Connecting your smartphone to your computer).
- For all other types of accounts, including ISP accounts and accounts you access using a VPN server connection (typically a work account; see Connecting to a VPN), message retrieval depends on the option you chose from the Automatic Send/Receive list during account setup (see Setting up a POP/IMAP account in the Inbox application: Common email providers or Setting up a POP/IMAP account in the Inbox application: Other email providers), as follows:

If you chose a time interval: Your smartphone automatically checks for and downloads new messages according to that interval.

If you chose Manually: Follow these steps to send and receive messages:

- 1 Go to your Today screen.
- 2 Press **E-mail** (left action key).

- 3 Select the account containing the messages you want to view.
- 4 Press Menu (right action key) and select Send/Receive to synchronize your smartphone with your email server.
 - Partially downloaded messages appear in the message list with a partial envelope icon to the left of the subject. To view the full message, either press **Menu** (right action key) and select **Download Message**, or open the message and select **Get the rest of this message**.

DID YOU KNOW? You can view messages sent as HTML with the HTML formatting intact.

Receiving attachments

- Scroll to the attachment name (below the subject) to highlight it. This marks it for download.
- 2 Synchronize the email account that contains the message as described in the previous sections.
- 3 Scroll to and select the attachment name (below the subject) to open the attachment.

attachments in a number of different formats, including PDF. PDF file attachments open in PDF Viewer on your smartphone (see PDF Viewer).

TP To store attachments on an expansion card, insert the card into your smartphone's expansion card slot, press Menu (right action key) and select Tools > Options. Select Storage and check the When available, use this storage card to store attachments box.

If you are synchronizing with Outlook on your computer and want to download attachments automatically, do the following:

- 1 Press Start and select Programs.
- 2 Select ActiveSync (3).
- 3 Press **Menu** (right action key) and select **Options**.
- 4 Select E-mail, and then select Settings.
- 5 Check the Include file attachments box.
- **6** (Optional) To automatically download attachments up to a certain size only,

check the **Only if smaller than** box and enter the maximum attachment size.

7 Press OK 📵.

To automatically download attachments from an IMAP4 email account (typically an ISP account) or an account that you access using a VPN server connection (typically a work account; see <u>Connecting to a VPN</u>, do the following:

- 1 Go to your Today screen.
- 2 Press **E-mail** (left action key).
- 3 Do one of the following:
 - If the account list is displayed, press
 Menu (right action key) and
 select Options.
 - If the message list for a specific account is displayed, press Menu (right action key) and select Tools > Options.
- **4** On the Accounts tab, select the IMAP4 account name.
- 5 Press Next (right action key) until you reach Server information, and then select Options.
- 6 Press **Next** twice, and then select either **Get full copy of messages** and

When getting full copy, get attachments or Entire message, depending on the option displayed.

DID YOU KNOW? Embedded images and objects cannot be received as attachments, unless you have an IMAP4 email account with TNEF disabled. Note that TNEF must be enabled to receive meeting requests.

Working with email messages

Adding a contact from an email message

You can add a contact name or email address to your Contacts list directly from the To, cc, or bcc field of an email message. You can select the name or address from either an outgoing or an incoming message, and you can either create a new contact or add the information to an existing contact.

- In an open message, highlight the name or address of the contact you want to add.
- 2 Press Center .

- 3 Press Save (left action key).
- 4 Select <New Contact> to create a new contact entry for this name or address, or select an existing contact to add the name or address to that entry.



- 5 Enter or edit the contact information.
- **6** Press **Save** (left action key).

Adding an online address book

Many email servers, including servers running Exchange Server, can verify names with an online address book, also called a directory service or a Global Address List. After you create and enable an email account, the Inbox application checks your contacts list and then the directory service to verify names that you enter in the To, cc, and boc fields.

BEFORE YOU BEGIN Do the following:

- Ask your system administrator for the name of the directory service and the server, and whether authentication is required for accessing an online address book.
- If your company is using Exchange Server 2003 upgraded to Service Pack 2 or Exchange Server 2007, you must first synchronize with the Exchange server to enable the Global Address List to find a contact.
- 1 In the message list, press Menu (right action key) and select Tools > Options.
- 2 Select the Address tab.
- Select the address book you want to check for email addresses, and then select Add.
- 4 Enter the name of the directory service.
- **5** Enter the server name.
- 6 If your server requires authentication, check the box and enter your username and password.

- 7 (Optional) Check the Check name against this server box to enable this directory service.
- 8 Select OK

TIP To delete a directory service, highlight it, press and hold **Center** on the 5-way, and select **Delete**.

Using an online address book

You can access contact information, such as an email address or phone number, from your organization's online address book or Global Address List (GAL). To access a GAL, make sure you are accessing either Exchange Server 2007 or Exchange Server 2003 upgraded to Service Pack 2. This feature is useful only if you know the exact name as it appears in the directory.

DID YOU KNOW? You can use the Global Address
List to find a contact. In Contacts, press
Menu (right action key) and select Company
Directory. When sending a meeting request,
select Attendees, press Menu (right action
key) and select Company Directory.

BEFORE YOU BEGIN Add access to an online address book to your smartphone (see Adding an online address book).

- 1 In a new message, select To.
- 2 Press Menu (right action key) and select Add Recipient.
- 3 Press Menu (right action key) and select Company Directory.
- 4 Enter the contact name as it appears in the directory and press Find (left action key). You must spell the contact name correctly.

TIP When you sync with Outlook on your computer, disable your online address books to avoid errors. Press Menu (right action key) and select Tools > Options. Select Address, select each online address book, and then uncheck the Check name against this server box. Be sure to turn this option back on if you synchronize other email accounts.

Finding messages

You can find messages containing a specific word or phrase. The find feature searches names, email addresses, and subject lines.

- 1 Press **E-mail** (left action key).
- 2 Select the account you want.
- 3 Begin typing the word or phrase you want to find. The list display changes to show only those messages containing the letters you have entered.
- 4 Continue entering letters to narrow the display until the message you want appears.

DID YOU KNOW? If you synchronize with Microsoft Outlook 2007, you can also find messages stored on your mail server.

Replying to a message

- 1 Open the message to which you want to reply.
- 2 Press Reply (left action key).
- **3** Address the message and enter any text you want to add.
- 4 (Optional) Select Edit sender's message to edit the original sender's message text that you include in your reply.
- **5** Press **Send** (left action key).

DID YOU KNOW? If you reply to a message sent as HTML, the reply is sent in HTML also.

Forwarding a message

- Open the message you want to forward.
- 2 Press **Menu** (right action key) and select **Forward**.
- **3** Address the message and enter any text you want to add.
- 4 Press **Send** (left action key).

Deleting messages

You can delete a message you are reading, or you can delete one or more messages from the message list.

To delete a message you are reading:

 Press Menu (right action key) and select Delete.

To delete messages from the message list:

- 1 Highlight the message(s) you want to delete. To highlight multiple messages, tap and drag the stylus across the messages in the list.
- 2 Press **Delete** (left action key).

3 Select Yes to confirm the deletion.

Using email shortcuts

You can perform common email tasks by pressing and holding certain keys on the keyboard. Open the message you want, and then press and hold any of the following:

Press and hold	То
Н	View all email shortcuts
А	Reply to the sender of a message and all other addressees
R	Reply to the sender only
K	Mark a message read or unread
F	Flag a message as high priority
М	Move a message between folders
0	Forward a message
D	Delete a message

L	Fully download a partially downloaded message
S	Synchronize your smartphone with the server to get and send new messages

Adding a signature to your messages

You can use a different signature with each email account

- 1 Go to your Today screen.
- 2 Press **E-mail** (left action key).
- 3 Do one of the following:
 - If the account list is displayed, press
 Menu (right action key) and
 select Options.
 - If the message list for a specific account is displayed, press Menu (right action key) and select Tools > Options.
- 4 On the Accounts tab, select **Signatures**.
- **5** Select the account for which you want to create a signature.



- 6 Check the Use signature with this account box to add this signature to new messages you create with this account.
- 7 (Optional) Check the Use when replying and forwarding box to add this signature to messages you reply to or forward with this account.
- 8 Highlight the text "Enter a signature here" and enter the signature text you want to use.
- 9 Press OK (⊛).

Customizing your email settings

When you customize settings for an email account, the options you choose apply to that account only.

- 1 Go to your Today screen.
- 2 Press **E-mail** (left action key).
- **3** Do one of the following:
 - If the account list is displayed, press
 Menu (right action key) and
 select Options.
 - If the message list for a specific account is displayed, press Menu (right action key) and select Tools > Options.
- 4 On the Accounts tab, highlight the account you want and set any of the following options:



Security: Allows you to specify whether you receive a warning message before you open a URL or file link that is not on your smartphone.

Display account picker when opening

Inbox: Specifies whether a list of your email accounts appears when you open the Inbox application, allowing you to select the one you want to use. If the box is unchecked, the Inbox application opens to the last account you used.

TIP If the Display account picker when opening Inbox box is unchecked, repeatedly press Left on the 5-way after you open the Inbox application to cycle through your accounts.

5 Select the **Message** tab and set any of the following options:



When replying to e-mail, include body: Indicates whether the body of a message you received appears in your response to that message.

Keep copies of sent items in Sent folder: Indicates whether messages you send are stored in the Sent folder.

Warn when deleting messages in the message list: Specifies whether a confirmation message appears when you delete one or more messages from the message list.

After deleting or moving a message: Specifies what you want to see after you delete or move an email message you are reading: the account Inbox or the next message.

6 Select the **Address** tab and set any of the following options:

In Contacts, get e-mail addresses from: Indicates whether you want to check Contacts in addition to any directory services for email addresses.



Check names using these address books: Indicates which directory services you want to check for email addresses.

Add: Enables you to add directory services to the list of online address books.

7 Select the **Storage** tab and set any of the following options:



When available, use this storage card to store attachments: Indicates whether you want to automatically store email attachments on an expansion card. You must have a card inserted in your smartphone's expansion card slot to select this option.

Empty deleted items: Select
Immediately to have the Deleted folder
emptied anytime you delete a message.
Select On connect/disconnect to have
the folder deleted anytime you open or
quit the Inbox application. Select
Manually to manually empty the
Deleted folder.

TIP If you choose to manually empty the Deleted folder, you delete messages from this folder in the same way that you delete any other messages (see, Deleting messages).

8 Press OK (18).

Changing email download settings

You can customize the download options for each email account that you have with an Internet service provider (ISP) or that you access using a VPN server connection (typically a work account).

NOTE To change options for a Microsoft Office Outlook E-mail account, press Start , select Programs, and then select ActiveSync . Press Menu (right action key) and select Options.

- 1 Press **E-mail** (left action key).
- 2 Do one of the following:
 - If the account list is displayed, press
 Menu (right action key) and
 select Options.
 - If the message list for a specific account is displayed, press Menu

(right action key) and select **Tools** > **Options**.

- 3 Select the email account you want.
- 4 Press **Next** (right action key) until the following screen is displayed.



5 Select either of the following:

Automatic Send/Receive: Specifies the time interval for automatically downloading email, from every 5 minutes to once a day. If you do not want to automatically download messages, select **Manually**.

Download messages: Specifies the number of days' worth of email to be retrieved for each automatic or manual retrieval

TIP To save memory, limit the number of emails that are downloaded to your smartphone by selecting a larger time interval for automatically downloading messages or a smaller time interval for how many days' worth of messages are downloaded.

6 Select **Advanced Settings**, and then select any of the following:



Send/receive when I click Send:

Specifies whether you can manually send and receive messages, in addition to automatically downloading them.

Use automatic send/receive schedule when roaming: Specifies whether automatic downloading takes place when you are roaming. This may result

in higher connection charges than downloading while in your home network.

When deleting messages: Specifies whether messages should be deleted from the mail server when you delete them on your smartphone, or whether messages you delete on your smartphone should remain on the server

- 7 Press **Done** (left action key).
- 8 Press Next (right action key).
- **9** Select either of the following:



Message format: Select the format for sending and receiving messages. If you select HTML, messages sent to you as HTML are received with their formatting intact. If you select Plain Text, all messages are received as plain text.

DID YOU KNOW? Messages sent to you as plain text are always received as plain text, even if you select HTML.

Message download limit: Select the size of an incoming message that is automatically downloaded. For any message that exceeds this size, you must manually download the rest of the message. Selecting a higher limit means more of your messages will be fully downloaded, but message retrieval might take longer. You can also choose to download message headers only, regardless of size.

10 Press **Finish** (right action key).

Working with meeting invitations

You can receive meeting invitations on your smartphone in the same way that you receive email messages.

NOTE You can create meeting invitations on your smartphone; see <u>Sending a meeting request</u>.

Here are the key features of meeting invitations:

- Meeting invitations appear on your smartphone in the Inbox application, not in the Calendar application.
- From within the Inbox application, you can accept, decline, or tentatively accept a meeting invitation.
- If you accept an invitation, the meeting shows up as an appointment in the Calendar application.
- You can reply to and forward meeting invitations in the same way as email messages.

- 1 Press **E-mail** (left action key).
- 2 Select the account you want.
- 3 Select a meeting invitation to open it. Meeting invitations are displayed with this icon: .
- 4 To accept the invitation, press Accept (left action key), select whether to edit (include comments with) your response, and then select OK.

To decline or tentatively accept the invitation, press **Menu** (right action key) and select **Decline** or **Tentative**.

TIP If you receive an updated meeting invitation, you can again choose to accept, decline, or tentatively accept. If you receive a meeting cancellation, you don't need to do anything.

Sending email messages from within another application

You can send files such as pictures, videos, and ringtones as attachments to email messages (see <u>Creating and sending an</u> email message).

You can send certain files as attachments from within the application where the file is created or stored. For example, if you take a picture with the built-in camera on your smartphone, you can select an option to send the picture as an attachment to an email message. You can also use this feature with videos and sound files. For details, see the chapter on the specific application.



Your text and multimedia messages

If you need to get a short message to a friend or a coworker fast, send a text message from your Palm® Treo™ 800w smartphone to their mobile phone or email address.

If you need more than text to express yourself, use multimedia messaging to give your message extra impact by adding a photo, video, or sound file.

Benefits

- Enjoy quick communication
- Use text messaging to chat with friends
- Be as simple or as creative as you want

In this chapter

Using the Messaging application	121
Customizing the Messaging application	130

Using the Messaging application

You can use the Messaging application to send and receive brief text messages (SMS) and multimedia messages (MMS). Before you use your smartphone to send or receive messages, consult your wireless service provider for pricing and availability of text and multimedia messaging services.

Creating and sending a text message

Each text message can have up to 160 characters. You can send a message of more than 160 characters, but the message will automatically be split into several messages. If you send a text message to an email address, the email address is deducted from the 160-character count

DID YOU KNOW? You can send and receive text messages even while you are on a phone call. This is easiest when using a hands-free headset or the speakerphone.

BEFORE YOU BEGIN Make sure that your phone is on and that you're inside a coverage area (see <u>Turning your phone on</u>).

- Press **Start** and select **Messaging**.
- 2 Press New (left action key).
- 3 Enter the recipient's name, mobile phone number, or email address. Here are some shortcuts:



- If the recipient's name and mobile number are in your Contacts list, type the first few letters of the first or last name or simply enter the first initial, followed by a space, and then the last initial to find a name.
- Press Center to view a list of recently used addresses, and select the recipient from the list. Select Add



Recipient to add a recipient from your Contacts list.

- If the recipient's name is in an online address book, press Center , enter the name, press Menu (right action key), and then select Company Directory. Select the name, and then select either the phone number or the email address. For more information, see Using an online address book.
- If the recipient's name and mobile number are not in your Contacts list, enter the full mobile number or email address
- To address a message to multiple recipients, separate the addresses by pressing **Enter** or entering a semicolon (;). You can send a message to up to 20 addresses.
- TIP To send a message to a different number for a contact, select the contact in the To field, and then edit the number that appears in the box directly below the contact number. You can also select a number by pressing **Center** on the 5-way, and then edit it.

- 4 Enter your message, or tap and then select a predefined phrase you want to insert.
- 5 (Optional) Tap (a) and then select an emoticon to add to your message.
 - TIP You can also access predefined phrases and emoticons by pressing **Menu** (right action key) on the message compose screen.
 - TIP Some symbols can't be used in text messages. Invalid characters are automatically replaced by the Messaging application.
- **6** Press **Send** (left action key).

Creating and sending a multimedia message

Multimedia messages consist of pictures, videos, text, and sounds presented as one or more slides. You can include any of the following items:

Ringtones

MIDI

Sound clips

- AMR
- QCELP

Pictures

- JPFG
- GIF
- WBMP

Videos

- 3GPP
- 3GPP2
- MPFG4

Outgoing multimedia messages can be up to 300KB by default, but your wireless service provider may have a different maximum message size.

BEFORE YOU BEGIN Make sure that your phone is on and that you're inside a coverage area (see <u>Turning your phone on</u>).

- 1 Press Start and select Messaging.
- 2 Press Menu (right action key) and select New MMS



- 3 Enter the recipient's mobile phone number or email address. Here are some shortcuts:
 - If the recipient's name and mobile number are in your Contacts list, type the first few letters of the first or last name or simply enter the first initial, followed by a space, and then the last initial to find a name.
 - Press Center to view a list of recently used addresses, and select the recipient from the list. Select Add Recipient to add a recipient from your Contacts list.
 - If the recipient's name is in an online address book, press Center , enter the name, press Menu (right action key), and then select



Company Directory. Select the name, and then select either the phone number or the email address. For more information, see <u>Using an online address book</u>.

- If the recipient's name and mobile number are not in your Contacts list, enter the full mobile number or email address.
- **4** Select **Subject** and enter a title for the message.
- **5** Select and select one of the following:

Add Picture: Enables you to insert a picture. You can take a new picture with the built-in camera or insert an existing picture.

Add Video: Enables you to insert a video. You can capture a new video with the built-in camera or insert an existing video

Add Sound: Enables you to record a message, such as a voice caption for a picture, or insert an existing sound, such as a ringtone. You can add one sound per slide; to send more than one sound

in a message, add another slide to your message.

TIP You can add both a picture and a sound clip to the same slide in a message. To add a sound to a picture, select the picture thumbnail and select **Add Sound**. To add a picture to a sound, select the sound icon, and then select **Add Picture**.

- 6 (Optional) Select Add Text and enter a text caption or message for the slide you inserted. Tap to insert a predefined phrase. Tap to insert an emoticon.
- 7 (Optional) Select Add slide and repeat steps 5 and 6 to add another slide in this message.

DID YOU KNOW? If you add more than one slide to a message, you can set the length of time each slide is displayed. Press **Menu** (right action key) and select **Slide Timing**.

8 (Optional) To add a vCard (contact file) to a message, press Menu (left action key) and select Add Media > Add vCard.

TIP To preview a multimedia message as the recipient will see it, press **Menu** (right action key) and select **Preview Message**.

9 Press **Send** (left action kev).

Setting message options

You can set options for individual text and multimedia messages you send.

DID YOU KNOW? You can set general preferences that apply to all incoming and outgoing messages (see <u>Customizing message</u> <u>settings</u>). If you set options for an individual message, those options override your general preferences for that message only.

- 1 On the message compose screen, press **Menu** (right action key).
- 2 Select Message Options.
- **3** Select any of the following options:



Request Delivery/Read Receipt (multimedia messages only):

Indicates whether you want to receive confirmation that the message has been delivered or has been read.

Validity Period: Indicates how long the message remains available to be sent if the recipient's phone or email address is not available when you originally send the message. For example, if a message contains information that will not be useful to the recipient after an hour, you can set the validity for one hour

Message Priority (multimedia messages only): Indicates the priority for this message.



4 Press OK ⊚.

Receiving text and multimedia messages

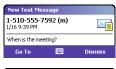
When your phone is on and you are in a wireless coverage area, you automatically receive new text messages. For multimedia messages, you can set your smartphone to automatically download new messages or to notify you that messages are ready to download. You can also set your smartphone to notify you when a new text or multimedia message arrives.

DID YOU KNOW? Message notifications include the message text unless you have turned on privacy mode (see <u>Customizing message settings</u>). If privacy mode is on, the notification states only the type of incoming message.

The new message notification may include any of the following options:

- Go To: Opens a text message so you can view its full contents
- **View:** Opens a multimedia message and plays the included media.

- Download: Downloads the full content of a multimedia message.
- Dismiss: Closes the notification and puts the message into your Inbox.





If you have multiple messages, the notification includes the number of messages and the type (text or multimedia).

Viewing/playing a message

You can open a message from a notification or from the Inbox of the Messaging application. When you open a multimedia message, playback starts automatically.

- **1** Do one of the following to open the message:
 - Press Start a and select
 Messaging. From the Inbox, select
 the message you want to view.
 - From a notification, select Go To (for text messages) or View (for multimedia messages).
- 2 Do any of the following:

Pause or resume playback (multimedia message only):

Select **Pause** (left action key). To resume playback, select **Play** (left action key).



Save the item that is playing (multimedia message only): Press

Menu (right action key) and select Save

See a summary of the message, including sender, date, and time:
Press Menu (right action key) and select Message Details.

Reply to the message: Press Menu (right action key) and select Reply or Reply All.

NOTE If the message is a single picture with no audio, select **Reply** (left action key) to reply to the message.

Forward the message: Press Menu (right action key) and select Forward.

Call the sender: Press Menu (right action key) and select Call Sender.

Add the sender's information to your Contacts list: Press Menu (right action key) and select Add to Contacts.

Save the message as a template for other messages: Press Menu (right action key) and select Save as Template.



DID YOU KNOW? When viewing a multimedia message containing multiple slides, you can press **Right** on the 5-way to move to the next slide, or press **Left** on the 5-way to move to the previous slide.

3 Press OK .

Using Messaging to chat

When you exchange more than one message with a single contact, the messages you exchange with that person are grouped into a chat session. When you select a chat session from your message list, the upper part of the screen displays all messages you've exchanged with this contact, and the lower part provides a text entry area.

1 Press Start and select Messaging.



2 Do one of the following:

Start a new chat: Select a message and reply to it.

Continue an existing chat: Select a message with the **chat** \mathcal{S} icon.

- 3 Enter your message.
- 4 Press **Send** (left action kev).
- In a received message, select to open a media file, or click a link to download and open a new multimedia message.

TIP Only the last 50 messages in a chat session are displayed. Select **View older messages** near the top of the screen to see earlier messages.

Using links in messages

When you receive a text message that contains a telephone number, email address, or URL, you can dial the number, send an email message, or go to the web page immediately. Your smartphone automatically opens the appropriate application from the link.

- Open a message in the Inbox or another folder.
- 2 Select the phone number, email address, or URL (appears as underlined blue text).

Message status icons

The status icons that appear next to each message in the Inbox, Outbox, and Sent folders indicate the following:



An unread text message.



An unread message with pictures or videos.



An unread message with sound.



A read text message.



A read message with pictures or videos.



A read message with sound.



A message that was sent with delivery confirmation turned on (Sent folder only).



Multiple messages exchanged with a single recipient (chat).



An urgent message. This icon appears below the message size on the right side of the screen.

Unread messages appear in bold.

Messages you've read appear in plain text.



Sorting your messages

You can sort the messages in any folder by date or by sender.

- Go to the Inbox or other folder you want to sort
- 2 Press Menu (right action key) and select Sort.
- 3 Select By Date or By Name.

Deleting a single message

- Go to the Inbox or other folder containing the message you want to delete.
- 2 Highlight the message.
- 3 Press **Menu** (right action key) and select **Delete**.
- 4 Select **Yes** to confirm the deletion

Deleting multiple messages

- Go to the Inbox or other folder containing the messages you want to delete.
- 2 Press Menu (right action key) and select Purge.
- 3 Select the age of messages to be deleted, or select **Delete all messages**.



4 Select **Purge** (left action key).

Customizing the Messaging application

Customizing message settings

- 1 Press Start and select Messaging.
- 2 Press **Menu** (right action key) and select **Options**.

3 On the Messages tab, set any of the following options:



Confirm message deletions: Indicates whether you want deletion confirmation messages to appear.

Automatically download MMS messages: Indicates whether you want to automatically receive multimedia messages. Check the Even when roaming box to download multimedia messages both on your home network and while roaming.

NOTE You might incur additional charges if you download multimedia messages while roaming.

Message validity period: Indicates how long messages remain available to be sent if the recipient's phone or email address is not available when you originally send the message. For example, if your messages generally contain information that will not be useful to recipients after an hour, you can set the validity for one hour.

Signature: Enables you to add a signature to outgoing messages. Select the button; then, on the Signature screen, check the **Use signature with new messages** box, enter your signature text, and then press **OK** .

4 Press OK 📵.

DID YOU KNOW? Options you select for an individual message (see <u>Setting message options</u>) override the general preferences you set for all messages.

Customizing chat settings

- 1 Press Start and select Messaging.
- 2 Press Menu (right action key) and select Options.



3 Select the Chat tab.



4 Select any of the following options: Create chat from messages: Indicates the conditions under which a chat session starts

Show time stamps of each message: Indicates whether you want chat session items to display a date and time indicator

5 Press OK (18).

Customizing notification settings

- 1 Press Start and select Messaging.
- 2 Press **Menu** (right action key) and select **Options**.

3 Select the Notification tab.



4 Select any of the following options:

Request MMS receipts: Indicates whether you want to receive a confirmation when a multimedia message is delivered or when it is read.

Privacy mode (hide text): Indicates whether you want only the message type displayed on a notification for a single incoming message. If the box is unchecked, the notification displays the text of the message.

Acknowledge when messages are received/read (multimedia messages only): Indicates whether you want a confirmation sent to the sender when

you receive or read a multimedia message.

5 Press OK (⊛).

Customizing network settings

IMPORTANT Changing the network settings can cause the Messaging application to stop working correctly. We recommend that you keep the default network settings.

- 1 Press Start (a) and select Messaging.
- 2 Press Menu (right action key) and select Options.
- 3 Select the Advanced tab.



- 4 Select Manual, and then select Edit.
- **5** Edit the network settings you want to change.

Select **Automatic** on the Advanced tab to restore the default settings.

6 Press OK (19) twice.





Your connections to the web and wireless devices

You use the web for so many things: finding driving directions, getting news, buying gifts, checking web-based email. Now, with your wireless service provider's network and your smartphone's built-in web browser, you can take the web with you almost anywhere you go.

The built-in Bluetooth® wireless technology on your Palm® Treo™ 800w smartphone helps you easily set up wireless connections to a number of devices, so you can enjoy the convenience of cable-free connectivity. You can also use your smartphone to connect your computer to the Internet and to share contacts or your favorite photos with other people.

Benefits

- · Carry the web with you
- Store web pages for offline viewing
- Connect to Bluetooth headsets and car kits
- Connect your computer to the Internet through your smartphone

In this chapter

Browsing the web	137
Connecting to devices with Bluetooth® wireless technology	143
Using your device as a wireless modem	147

Browsing the web

Internet Explorer Mobile provides quick and easy access to web pages. You can view most sites on your smartphone that you can view on your computer, including those with security and advanced features, such as JavaScript and frames.

Internet Explorer Mobile supports JavaScript, Secure Sockets Layer (SSL), and cookies, but does not support plug-ins (Flash, Shockwave, VBScript, WML script, and so on) or Java applets.

DID YOU KNOW? The Security certificates and 128-bit SSL strong encryption enable you to browse secure sites, such as online shopping, banking, and email. Remember, some secure sites also require a specific browser and may not work with Internet Explorer Mobile. Ask the organization for an alternate access point that is compatible with Internet Explorer Mobile.

BEFORE YOU BEGIN Do the following:

 Be sure to subscribe to data services from your wireless service provider.
 This is necessary for browsing the web. Make sure your phone is on and that you're inside a coverage area (see Turning your phone on).

Viewing a web page

By default, Internet Explorer Mobile scales web page content to fit your smartphone screen so that you can view most of the information without scrolling left or right.

From your Today screen by selecting the Web search field, entering the item you want to find, and then pressing **Center** on the 5-way.

- 1 Press Start and select Internet Explorer.
- 2 Highlight the address line, enter the address of the web page you want to view, and then press Center . To return to a recently viewed page, select the address line list, and then select the web address.

DID YOU KNOW? If you browse to a secure web page, the lock icon in the address line appears closed instead of open.



3 Press Menu (right action key), select View, and then select one of the following:

One Column: Arranges web pages into one column that is as wide as the screen, so that you don't have to scroll horizontally.

Fit To Screen: Maintains a layout similar to what you see on a desktop computer, but it makes items smaller and arranges the content so that you can see most of it without scrolling horizontally.

Desktop: Keeps the same layout and size as on a desktop computer, which requires both horizontal and vertical scrolling.

Full Screen: Hides the status and navigation areas and fills the entire screen with the web page. To exit full screen mode, press (right action key), or tap and hold anywhere on the screen and uncheck Full Screen.

Show Pictures: Shows or hides pictures on web pages. Hiding pictures speeds up the time it takes to load pages.

- **4** Here are some tips on viewing web pages and moving around in them:
 - To view the previous page, press
 Back (left action key) or
 Backspace .
 - To refresh the page with the latest content from the Internet, press
 Menu (right action key) and select Refresh.
 - To scroll through the page in One Column View or Default View, press
 Up ▲ or Down ▼. In Desktop View, press Up ▲, Down ▼, Left ◀, or Right ▶ to scroll in all directions.

go to the selected page. You can also tap the link on the screen with the stylus.

- To send email from a web page, select the address link. You need to configure an email application on your smartphone before you can use this feature (see Your email).
- To adjust the size of the text on web pages, press Menu (right action key), select View > Text Size, and then select the size you want.
- To view a web page's properties, press Menu (right action key) and select Tools > Properties.
- In a list, press Left

 or Right

 to cycle between items, and then press
 Center

 to accept the change.
- In a form, such as a browser search field, press Center to interact with the form, and then press Center to stop interacting with the form.
- 5 Press OK (a) to close Internet Explorer Mobile.

To Send a link, press Menu (right action key) and select Tools > Send Link. Select the option you want to use to send the link: SMS, MMS, or an email account.

Creating a favorite

Favorites let you bookmark a web page so that you can instantly access it without entering the web address.

BEFORE YOU BEGIN Create the folders where you want to store your favorites first. After you create a favorite, you can't move it to another folder (see <u>Organizing your favorites</u>).

- **1** Go to the page you want to mark as a favorite.
- 2 Press Menu (right action key) and select Add to Favorites.



- (Optional) Select Name and enter a different description.
- 4 (Optional) Select Create in, and then select the folder where you want to create the favorite.
- 5 Select Add.

TIP To delete a favorite or folder, press Menu and select Favorites. Select the Add/Delete tab, highlight the item you want to delete, and then select Delete. Select Yes to confirm deletion and press OK.

Viewing a favorite

- 1 Press Start and select Internet Explorer.
- 2 Press **Menu** (right action key) and select **Favorites**.

3 Select the page you want to view in the list.

Organizing your favorites

You can create folders to organize your favorites. For example, you can store travel links in one folder, stock links in another, and business links in a third folder.

- 1 Press **Start** and select **Internet Explorer**.
- 2 Press **Menu** (right action key) and select **Favorites**.
- 3 Select the Add/Delete tab.
- 4 Select New Folder
- **5** Enter a name for this folder, and then select **Add**.
- 6 Press OK 🐵

Downloading files and images from a web page

You can download files that are usable on your smartphone, such as new applications, MIDI ringtones, or pictures.

DID YOU KNOW? You can select the (Downloads) favorite to access your wireless service provider's downloads page.

- **1** Go to the page that contains the link to the file you want to download.
- 2 To download a file, press Left ◀ or Right ▶ to highlight the link to the file. Press and hold Center , and then select Save As. To download an image, tap and hold on the image, select Save Image, and then select Save As.
- 3 Select Name and enter a new name for the file.
- 4 Select the Folder list, and then select the folder where you want to save the file.
- 5 Select the Location list, and then select where you want to store the file: Main memory or Storage card.
- 6 Press OK 🐵.

Copying text from a web page

You can copy text from a web page and paste it in other applications.

- TIP You can copy the text from the entire web page. Tap and hold on the page, and then tap **Select All Text**. Tap and hold on the page again, and then tap **Copy**.
- 1 Use the stylus to highlight the text you want to copy.
- 2 Press **Menu** (right action key) and select **Edit** > **Copy**.
- **3** Go to the application in which you want to paste, and then position the cursor where you want to paste the text.
- 4 Press **Menu** (right action key) and select **Edit** > **Paste**.
 - TIP If Internet Explorer Mobile does not recognize a phone number as dialable, you can copy the phone number (as text) and paste it into the phone Dial Pad.

Returning to recently viewed pages

The History list stores the addresses of the pages you visited recently.

1 Press **Menu** (right action key) and select **History**.

CHAPTER

- 2 (Optional) Tap the Show list in the upper-left, and then select how you want to sort the History list.
- 3 Select the web page you want to view.

Customizing your Internet Explorer Mobile settings

- 1 Press **Menu** (right action key) and select Tools > Options.
- 2 On the General tab, set any of the following options:



Home Page: Sets the page that appears when you open Internet Explorer Mobile. To use the page you were on when you opened the menu, select Use Current. To select the original home page, select Use Default.

- **Encoding:** Sets the character set for the web pages you view.
- 3 Select the **Memory** tab and set any of the following options:



Save links to pages visited in the past: Sets how many days of activity the History list stores.

Clear History: Empties the History list.

Delete Files: Removes web files that you previously viewed synchronized with your computer.

4 Select the **Security** tab and set any of the following options:

Allow cookies: Sets whether your smartphone accepts cookies (small files containing info about your identity and

preferences). The page sends the file and stores it on your smartphone.



Clear Cookies: Deletes any cookies stored on your smartphone.

Warn when changing to a page that is not secure: Sets whether a message appears when you switch from a secure page to one that is not secure.

Warn when page content is blocked due to security settings: Sets whether a message appears when you attempt to open a page that does not meet the security standards associated with your smartphone.

5 Press OK 🐵

Connecting to devices with Bluetooth wireless technology

With the built-in Bluetooth® wireless technology on your smartphone, you can connect to a number of Bluetooth devices such as a headset or hands-free car kit, as well as to other phones, handhelds, or piconets. When you connect to another device, you create a partnership (also referred to by terms such as trusted pair, trusted device, or pairing) with that device. If your computer is enabled with Bluetooth wireless technology, you can also synchronize wirelessly or use your phone as a wireless modem.

You can create a list of Bluetooth devices that you trust to communicate with your smartphone. When communicating with trusted devices, your smartphone skips the discovery process and creates a secure link as long as the device is within range. Bluetooth range is up to 10 meters (30 feet)

in ideal conditions. Performance and range are affected by physical obstacles, radio interference from nearby electronic equipment, and other factors.

When you configure a headset (see Connecting to a Bluetooth® hands-free device), the headset is automatically added to your trusted device list. Follow the steps in this section to add other devices to your trusted device list, such as your computer.

DID YOU KNOW? Check your battery level before establishing a Bluetooth connection. If the battery level is low, you can't make a Bluetooth connection.

Entering basic Bluetooth settings

- 1 Go to your Today screen and tap **Bluetooth** 3.
- 2 Select the Mode tab and check the Turn on Bluetooth box to turn on the Bluetooth feature on your smartphone.



3 Check or uncheck the Make the device visible to other devices box.

Check this box to allow Bluetooth devices that are not on your Trusted Device list to request a connection with your device. Your device remains accessible to other devices until you uncheck the box.

The Bluetooth status icon

The Bluetooth icon on your Today screen indicates the status of the Bluetooth feature:

- Bluetooth off.
- Bluetooth on.
- Connected to a Bluetooth device.
- Call in progress with a Bluetooth headset or car kit.

Requesting a connection with another Bluetooth device

BEFORE YOU BEGIN To prepare your smartphone to be able to accept a connection from a requesting device, enter the basic Bluetooth settings as described in Entering basic Bluetooth settings.

- 1 Go to your Today screen and tap Bluetooth 8.
- 2 Select the Mode tab and check the Turn on Bluetooth box to turn on the Bluetooth feature on your smartphone.
- 3 Select the Devices tab, and then select Add new device.



EXY TEMP Partnership Two devices—for example, your smartphone and a hands-free device—that can connect because each device finds the same passkey on the other device. After you form a partnership with a device, you don't need to enter a passkey to connect with that device again. Partnership is also known as paired relationship, pairing, trusted device, and trusted pair.

4 Wait for your smartphone to search for devices and to display the device list.



- 5 Select the device with which you want to connect, and then press Next (right action key).
- 6 Enter an alphanumeric passkey between 1 and 16 characters long, and then press Next (right action key).

IMPORTANT Some hands-free devices have a predefined passkey. If your device has a predefined passkey, you can find it in the documentation for that device. Other devices provide a screen where you enter a passkey that you make up. In either case, you must use the same passkey on both your smartphone and the other device. We recommend that where possible, you make up a passkey of 16 alphanumeric characters (letters and numerals only) to

improve the security of your smartphone. The longer the passkey, the more difficult it is for the passkey to be deciphered.

- 7 If the passkey is not built-in, enter the same passkey on the other Bluetooth device, and then press **Finish** (right action key).
- 8 Press OK 🖲

You can now communicate with this device whenever it is within range and the Bluetooth feature on your smartphone is turned on. The range varies greatly depending on environmental factors. The maximum is about 9 meters (30 feet).

The To delete the established partnership with a device, go to the Bluetooth Settings screen and select the **Devices** tab. Highlight the connection you want to remove, press and hold **Center** on the 5-way, and then select **Delete**. Select **Yes** to confirm the deletion. The deleted device can no longer automatically connect with your smartphone.

Accepting a connection from another Bluetooth device

BEFORE YOU BEGIN To prepare your smartphone to be able to accept a connection from a requesting device, enter the basic Bluetooth settings as described in Entering basic Bluetooth settings.

- 1 Go to your Today screen and tap **Bluetooth** 3
- 2 Select the Mode tab and check the Turn on Bluetooth box to turn on the Bluetooth feature on your smartphone.
- 3 If you have already set up a partnership with the transmitting device, your smartphone is ready to receive the info.

 If you haven't set up a connection, check the Make this device visible to other devices box to let the device find your smartphone and request a connection.
- **4** When prompted to add this device, select **Yes**
- 5 Enter the same passkey on your smartphone and on the Bluetooth device

- (Optional) To give the partnership a more meaningful name, select **Display** Name and enter a new name
- **7** Press **Finish** (right action key).
- When your smartphone is receiving info, a notification tells you that a transmission is in progress. To stop the transmission, press **Cancel** (right action key). To close the notification, press **Hide** (left action key).

Using your device as a wireless modem

Internet Connection Sharing (ICS) is the feature that converts your smartphone into a modem so that you can access the Internet from your computer.

You can set up Internet Connection Sharing in one of two ways:

- Connect your smartphone to your computer using the USB sync cable.
- If your computer is enabled with Bluetooth wireless technology, you can set up your smartphone as a wireless

modem using the built-in Bluetooth technology.

Setting up a USB Internet Connection Sharing connection

- 1 Connect your smartphone to your computer using the sync cable.
- 2 On your smartphone, press **Start** and select Programs.
- 3 Select Internet Sharing



- 4 Select the PC Connection list, and then select USB.
- **5** Press **Connect** (left action kev).
- 6 On your computer, open your web browser to confirm that you can connect to the Internet.

Creating a Bluetooth Internet Connection Sharing connection

BEFORE YOU BEGIN

- Make sure your smartphone is visible (see Entering basic Bluetooth settings).
- · Create a partnership between your smartphone and vour computer. We recommend that you initiate the partnership from your smartphone (see

Requesting a connection with another Bluetooth device)

- 1 On your computer, double-click the icon to open the Bluetooth connections window Check the documentation included with your computer for instructions
- 2 Select the option to view devices within range.
- 3 You should see an icon representing vour smartphone. Double-click this icon to make sure that "Network Access Point" or something similar appears in the list of Bluetooth services
 - TIP Don't see your smartphone icon or the list of services? Check the documentation included with your computer, or contact your computer manufacturer for help. Different computer models use different terminology for the Bluetooth connection features.
- 4 On your smartphone, press **Start** and select Programs.



6 Select the PC Connection list, and then select Bluetooth PAN

NOTE Keep the default setting on the Network Connection list

- 7 Press Connect (left action key) and follow the wizard to set up Internet Sharing.
- **8** On your computer, follow the steps to accept or enable a Bluetooth PAN

- connection with your smartphone. Check the documentation included with your computer for instructions.
- 9 After you have connected, on your computer, open your web browser to confirm that you can connect to the Internet.





Your photos, videos, and music

Do you have a wallet bulging with photos of friends, family, pets, and your most recent vacation?

Are you tired of carrying both your MP3 player and your phone?

Your Palm® Treo™ 800w smartphone solves both problems. You can keep your favorite photos right on your smartphone—videos, too. And there's no need to carry an expensive MP3 player, because you can play music on your smartphone. Simply transfer songs onto your smartphone or an expansion card (sold separately) and then listen through your stereo headphones.

Benefits

- Never be far from your favorite people, places, and songs
- Arrange your photos, videos, and songs
- Avoid having to use a separate photo viewer, MP3, CD, or mini-disc player

In this chapter

Camera											154
Pictures & Videos											159
Windows Media Player Mobile											163

Synchronizing your media files

You can synchronize pictures, videos, and music files between your smartphone and your computer so that changes you make show up on both your computer and your smartphone. To synchronize media files, you must first choose Media as one of your synchronization options on your smartphone; see Changing which-applications sync.

The procedure for synchronizing media files is different for computers running Windows XP and computers running Windows Vista.

Synchronizing media files: Windows XP

BEFORE YOU BEGIN You must install ActiveSync® desktop software from the Windows Getting Started Disc (see Installing ActiveSync desktop software: Windows XP) and select the option to synchronize media (see Changing which applications sync).

When you synchronize your smartphone, your pictures and videos are synchronized between your smartphone and your desktop computer. On your computer, you can view the pictures and videos, and you can also send them to friends using your desktop email application.

To find all synchronized pictures and videos on your computer, look in C:\Documents and Settings\<Username>\My Documents\Treo My Documents.

You use Windows Media Player to synchronize music files; see <u>Transferring</u> media files to your smartphone.

Synchronizing media files: Windows Vista

BEFORE YOU BEGIN You must install Windows Mobile Device Center from the Windows Getting Started Disc (see Installing Windows Mobile Device Center: Windows Vista) and select the option to synchronize media (see Changing which applications sync).

On a computer running Windows Vista, you use Windows Media Player to synchronize all types of media files—pictures, videos, and music files—that are



on your computer to your smartphone. See <u>Iransferring media files to your</u> smartphone.

To synchronize pictures and videos from your smartphone to your computer, follow these steps:

- 1 Connect your smartphone to your computer with the USB sync cable.
- 2 On your computer, click Start > All Programs > Windows Mobile Device Center.
- 3 Select Connect without setting up vour device.
- 4 Select Pictures, Music and Video.
- 5 Select X new pictures/video clips are available for import.

All new or changed pictures and videos on your smartphone are synchronized to your computer.

Camera

Your smartphone comes with an easy-to-use, built-in, 1.3-megapixel camera with 2x digital zoom. You can use the camera to take and view pictures and videos and send them to your friends and family. To add a personal touch to your smartphone, use your pictures as your Today screen background and as caller ID images, or use your videos to create video ringtones.

You can receive and view pictures and videos, and send pictures and videos as attachments or multimedia messages (see Pictures & Videos). Or add a picture to a contact (see Adding a contact). You can also move pictures and videos to a computer by synchronizing your smartphone with your computer.

Taking a picture

By default, pictures are stored in the My Pictures folder on your smartphone. If you want to store your pictures on an expansion card, you can change where pictures are stored (see <u>Customizing your</u>

<u>Camera settings</u>). For information on accessing your pictures on your computer, see <u>Synchronizing media files: Windows</u> XP.

DID YOU KNOW? Pictures are captured and stored in 16-bit color, JPG format. Resolution settings range from a low end of QQVGA (120 x 160 pixels) to a high end of 1.3-megapixels (1280 x 1024 pixels). You can change the default setting. See <u>Customizing your Camera</u> settings for details.

- 1 Press **Start** and select **Programs**.
- 2 Select Camera 💽 .



TIP If you see a camcorder icon below the preview image, video mode is on. To turn on the still camera, press **Menu** and select **Still**.

- 3 Adjust the position of your smartphone until you see the subject you want to photograph on the screen. Your smartphone has a self-portrait mirror next to the camera lens on the back of your smartphone. Use the mirror when you're taking a picture and you want to be in the picture.
- 4 (Optional) Adjust any of the following:

Zoom: Press **Up** ▲ to zoom in or **Down** ▼ to zoom out.

Resolution: Press **Menu** (right action key) and select **Resolution** to change the image quality.

- 5 (Optional) Set a five-second timer: Press Menu (right action key), select Mode, and then select Timer.
- **6** Press **Center** to capture the picture or start the timer.
- 7 Hold your smartphone still until the picture renders, and then do one of the following:
 - Press Camera (left action key) to take another picture.



DID YOU KNOW? After three minutes of inactivity when previewing an image, the camera goes into standby mode. Press any key or tap the screen to return to the image preview.

Taking pictures in burst mode

Burst mode takes five pictures in quick succession, with one button press.

- 1 Press **Start** and select **Programs**.
- 2 Select Camera 💽 .
- 3 Press Menu (right action key) and select Mode > Burst.
- 4 Press Center .

Recording a video

Videos can be any length, provided you have enough storage space available. By default, videos are stored in the My Pictures folder on your smartphone. If you want to store your videos on an expansion card, see <u>Customizing your Camera settings</u> to change where videos are stored. For information on accessing your

videos on your computer, see Synchronizing media files: Windows XP.

- 1 Press Start (a) and select Programs.
- 2 Select Camera 💽 .
- 3 Press **Menu** (right action key) and select **Video**.
- 4 Adjust the position of your smartphone until you see the subject you want to record on the screen. Your smartphone has a self-portrait mirror next to the camera lens on the back of your smartphone. Use the mirror when you're recording a video and you want to be in the video.
- **5** Press **Menu** and select **Quality** to change the video resolution.



6 Press **Center** to start recording.

- 7 When you're finished recording, press Stop (left action key) or Center to stop recording.
- 8 (Optional) To review the video in Windows Media Player Mobile, press Thumbnails (left action key), highlight the video, and then press Center . Press OK (a) to return to Thumbnail View.

TIP If you don't like a video you recorded, delete it. See <u>Deleting a picture or video</u> for details

DID YOU KNOW? After three minutes of inactivity when previewing an image, the camera goes into standby mode. Press any key or tap the screen to return to the image preview. If the camera goes to standby while the recording is paused, the video recording is stopped and the video is sayed.

Customizing your Camera settings

- 1 Press Start and select Pictures & Videos .
- 2 Press **Menu** (right action key) and select **Options**.
- **3** On the General tab, set any of the following options:



Use this picture size: Sets the size of pictures you send with the Inbox application.

When rotating a picture, rotate 90 degrees: Sets the direction in which pictures rotate.

4 Select the **Slide Show** tab, and set any of the following options:



During slide shows, optimize for viewing: Sets whether pictures are optimized for portrait or landscape format during slide shows.

Play screensaver when connected to my PC and idle for 2 minutes: Sets whether the pictures in your My Pictures folder are used as a screensaver when your smartphone is connected to your computer and ActiveSync® desktop software is not running. **5** Select the **Camera** tab, and set any of the following options:



Type filename prefix: Assigns a name to a series of pictures to be captured, such as Seattle001, Seattle002, and so on.

Save files to: Specifies whether pictures and videos are stored on your smartphone or on an expansion card.

Still image compression level: Sets the default quality and size for newly captured still pictures.

6 Select the **Video** tab, and set any of the following options:



Include audio when recording video files: Turns the microphone on and off so that you can record videos with or without sound.

Time limit for videos: Limits the length of videos you record. You can select the **No limit** option.

DID YOU KNOW? Videos are captured and stored in 3GP format. Video resolution ranges from 176 x 144 pixels to 352 x 288 pixels. You can change the resolution setting by pressing **Menu** (right action key) and selecting **Quality**.

7 Press **OK** (a) to return to Thumbnail View.

Pictures & Videos

Viewing a picture

In addition to viewing the pictures you capture with the built-in camera, you can view pictures captured on many popular digital cameras or downloaded from the Internet. Your smartphone supports the following picture formats:

- JPG
- PNG
- BMP
- GIF
- 1 Press **Start** and select **Programs**.
- 2 Select Pictures & Videos 🔤 .
- 3 Select the picture you want to view.
- 4 Press **OK** (a) to return to Thumbnail View.

Viewing a video

In addition to viewing the videos you capture with the built-in camera, you can view videos captured on many popular digital cameras or streamed from



websites. Your smartphone supports and streams the following types of video files:

- MPEG-4
- 3GPP2
- 3GPP
- · WMV, WMA, ASF
- RTSP Streaming
- 1 Press Start (a) and select Programs.
- 2 Select Pictures & Videos .
- 3 Select the video you want to view. For more info on viewing videos, see <u>Playing media files on your smartphone</u>.
- 4 Press **OK** (a) to return to Thumbnail View.
 - TIP To view pictures or videos in a different folder, tap the **Show** list in the upper-left, and then select the album you want to view.

Viewing a slide show

- 1 Press Start and select Programs.
- 2 Select Pictures & Videos
- 3 Press Menu (right action key) and select Play Slide Show. The slide show plays automatically.

4 Press Center to display the slide show toolbar, which you can use to Rotate Play Play Reverse Rotate Rotate The Norman Play the slide show.

Sending a picture or video

You can send a picture or video to other picture-enabled mobile smartphone devices or to an email address as an attachment.

You cannot send copyrighted pictures or videos that appear with a lock icon in Thumbnail View.

- 1 Highlight the picture or video you want to send
- 2 Press Menu (right action key) and select **Send**
- 3 Select the option you want to use to send the picture or video: an email account or MMS
- 4 When the Inbox or Messaging application opens, address and send the message (see <u>Creating and sending an email message</u> or <u>Creating and sending</u> a multimedia message).

Creating a video ringtone

You can save a video that you record as a ringtone.

- **1** Highlight the video you want to use as a ringtone.
- 2 Press Menu (right action key) and select Save to Contact Ring Tone.
- **3** Select the contact to whom you want to assign the ringtone.

Organizing pictures and videos

You can move or copy pictures and videos to other folders or between your smartphone and an expansion card.

- Highlight the picture or video you want to move or copy.
- 2 Do one of the following:
 - To move the picture or video to another location, press Menu (right action key) and select Edit > Cut.
 - To keep the picture or video in two locations, press Menu (right action key) and select Edit > Copy.

- 3 Tap the Show list in the upper-left, and select the location where you want to place the picture or video.
- 4 Press **Menu** (right action key) and select **Edit** > **Paste**

You can also view a specific folder or expansion card and arrange the pictures and videos by name, date, or size.

- 1 Tap the **Show** list in the upper-left, and then select the folder you want to view.
- 2 Tap the Sort By list in the upper-right, and then select the sort method: Name, Date, or Size.

Using a picture as the Today screen background

- 1 Highlight the picture you want to use.
- 2 Press Menu (right action key) and select Set as Today Background.
- 3 Select the Transparency level list and select the appropriate level. Use a higher percentage for a more transparent picture and a lower percentage for a more opaque picture.
- 4 Press **OK** (a) to return to Thumbnail View.



Editing a picture

For more extensive edits, just download your picture or video to your computer and edit it in your favorite graphics program. Then sync the picture or video back to your smartphone.

- 1 Select the picture you want to edit.
- 2 Press **Menu** (right action key) and select **Edit**.
- 3 Do any of the following:
 - To rotate the picture 90 degrees, press Rotate (left action key).
 - To crop the picture, press Menu
 (right action key) and select
 Crop. Tap and drag the stylus to
 highlight the area to crop. Tap outside
 the box to stop cropping.
 - To adjust the brightness and contrast levels of the picture, press Menu (right action key) and select AutoCorrect.
 - To undo an edit, press Menu and select Undo.

 To cancel all unsaved edits you made to the picture, press Menu (right action key) and select Revert to Saved.

Deleting a picture or video

- Highlight the picture or video you want to delete
- 2 Press **Menu** (right action key) and select **Delete**.
- **3** Select **Yes** to confirm the deletion.

Renaming a picture or video

- Highlight the picture or video you want to delete.
- 2 Press Menu (right action key) and select **Properties**.
- **3** Enter a new name for the picture or video.
- 4 Press **OK** (a) to return to Thumbnail View.

Windows Media Player Mobile

Windows Media Player Mobile can play music, audio, and video files that are stored on your smartphone or on an expansion card (sold separately) in any of the following file formats:

- WMA
- WMV
- MP3
- 3GP
- AAC
- AAC+
- MPEG-4

DID YOU KNOW? You can also download animated GIF files and view them in Internet Explorer Mobile.

IMPORTANT You must have QuickTime Player version 6.5 or later installed on your computer to play videos recorded by your smartphone. You can download the videos from an expansion card or you can click the

video thumbnail after synchronizing the files

You can listen to these music, audio, and video files through the speaker on the back of your smartphone or through stereo headphones.

Transferring media files to your smartphone

Use the Sync feature in the desktop version of Windows Media Player to transfer digital music, audio, video, and playlist files from your computer to an expansion card or your smartphone. Using the Sync feature ensures that the files are transferred correctly.

TIP For tips on using the desktop version of Windows Media Player, go to the Help menu in Windows Media Player on your computer.

BEFORE YOU BEGIN Do the following:

 Be sure you have Windows Media Player 10 or later installed on your computer. On a Windows XP computer, Windows Media Player 10 must be



installed on your computer before you install ActiveSync desktop software. Both Windows Media Player 10 and ActiveSync desktop software can be installed from the Windows Mobile Getting Started CD that came with your smartphone. (If you are having trouble, see Mv video and music files won't svnc.)

NOTE Windows Media Player 11 is already installed on Windows Vista computers.

- To sync media files with your computer, set the Media sync option on your smartphone (see Setting synchronization options).
- 1 On your computer, open Windows Media Plaver.
- 2 (Optional) If you're transferring media files to an expansion card, insert a 32MB or larger expansion card into your smartphone.
- 3 Connect your smartphone to your computer with the USB sync cable.
- **4** Do one of the following:

Windows XP: When the Device Setup Wizard opens on your computer, click Automatic Check the Customize the playlists that will be synchronized box.

Windows Vista: Select the Svnc tab. and then select **Treo** > **Set Up Sync**. Check the Sync this device automatically box.

- Select the playlists you want to sync. On a Windows Vista computer, select the All Photos and All Videos playlists to synchronize pictures and videos between your smartphone and your computer.
- 6 Click Finish to begin the transfer. If you are transferring files to an expansion card, be patient: transferring media files to an expansion card can take several minutes.

Playing media files on your smartphone

- 1 Press Start and select Programs.
- 2 Select Windows Media ().
- **3** Press **Menu** (right action key) and select Library.

- 4 Select the Library list in the upper-left, and then select the library you want to use. If you can't find a media file on your expansion card, update the library (see Working with libraries).
 - TIP To play a file that is not in a library, go to the Library screen, press **Menu**, and select **Open File**.
- **5** Select the item you want to play (such as a song, album, or artist name).
- **6** Press **Play** (left action key). See the next page for playback controls.
- 7 Press Menu (right action key) and select any of the following during playback:

Library: Displays the Library screen so you can select a different song to play.

Shuffle/Repeat > Shuffle: Plays the Now Playing playlist in random order. A check appears next to this command when it is on.

TIP To repeat the current song, press **Menu** and select **Repeat Song**.

Shuffle/Repeat > Repeat: Plays the Now Playing playlist repeatedly. A check appears next to this command when it is on.

Stop: Ends playback.

Use any of the following onscreen controls during playback:

- ▶ or **Center** plays the current file.
- II or **Center** pauses the current file.
- or Left
 skips to the beginning of the current file or to the previous file.
- ▶ or **Right** ▶ skips to the next file.
- sets the point from which playback begins. Tap and drag the slider to change the current position.
- or **Volume button** increases the volume level
- or **Volume button** decreases the volume level.
- turns the sound on or off.
- displays a video using the full screen.

9

- displays a website where you can find music and videos to play.
- ★ indicates the rating of the current file. Select the star to change the rating.

DID YOU KNOW? You can play streaming files from the web. To play an MMS (Microsoft Media Streaming) file, press **Menu** on the Library screen and select **Open URL**. Select **URL** and enter the website address, or select **History** and select a site you've visited before.

DID YOU KNOW? If you close the Windows Media Player Mobile window, your music continues to play in the background.

Working with libraries

A library represents each of the storage locations available to Windows Media Player Mobile, so you should have two libraries: My Device and My Storage Card. Each library contains links to the media files in that location. Windows Media Player Mobile usually updates the My Device library automatically, but you must manually update the My Storage Card library.

- If you don't see a media file that you added, manually update the library.
- 1 Press Start and select Programs.
- 2 Select Windows Media 🕞.
- 3 Press Menu (right action key, and select Library.
- 4 Press **Menu** (right action key) and select **Update Library**.
- **5** Wait for the files to be added, and then select **Done**.
 - TP To delete an item from a library, highlight the item and then press and hold **Center** on the 5-way to open the shortcut menu. Select **Delete from Library**, and select **Yes** to confirm the deletion.
 - DID YOU KNOW? If you move files between your smartphone and an expansion card, be sure to update your libraries, or you won't be able to see the files in their new location.

Working with playlists

A playlist is a list of media files that play in a specific order. You can use playlists to group audio files together or video files together for convenient playback. For example, in the desktop Windows Media Player, you can create a playlist of upbeat songs for when you exercise and a playlist of soothing songs for a long flight. When you synchronize, your favorite playlists are automatically copied to your smartphone. Your playlists appear in your libraries (in the My Playlists category).

A temporary playlist, called Now Playing, appears on the Now Playing menu. It lists the currently playing file, as well as any files that are queued up to play next. You can add to, modify, or clear the files on the Now Playing playlist.

- **1** Go to the Now Playing screen:
 - If you are on the Library screen, select the **Now Playing** category.
 - If you are on the Playback screen, select **Now Playing**.



- 2 Do any of the following:
 - To move a file up or down one slot, highlight the file and select Move
 Up or Move Down .

TIP You can also move a file in the Now Playing playlist by tapping and dragging it to a new position.

- To add a file, highlight the file, select
 Add p, press Menu (right action key), and then select Queue
 Up.
- To delete a file from the playlist, highlight the file and select **Remove** X.

9

- To view more info about a file, highlight the file and select
 Properties .
- To remove all items from the Now Playing playlist, press Menu (right action key) and select Clear Now Playing.

Customizing Windows Media Player Mobile

- 1 If you are on any screen other than the Playback screen, press OK to go to the Playback screen.
- 2 Press Menu (right action key) and select Options.
- **3** On the Playback tab, set any of the following options:



Show time as: Sets whether the time remaining or time elapsed appears in the Playback screen.

Pause playback while using another program: Sets whether playback continues if you switch to another application.

Resume playback after a phone call: Sets whether playback continues after you finish a phone call.

4 Select the **Video** tab and set any of the following options:

Play video in full screen: Sets whether videos automatically play in full screen format.

Scale to fit window: Sets whether videos are automatically scaled to fit the Playback screen.

5 Select the **Network** tab and set the following options:

Protocol: Enables and disables the available protocols. You must select at least one protocol. You can also set a UDP Port.

Internet connection speed: Specifies the speed of your network connection, and specifies whether you want the device to detect connection speed.

- 6 Select the Library tab and set whether you want to see the Library or Playback screen when you open Windows Media Player Mobile.
- 7 Select the Skins tab and select Previous or Next to set the player's background.
- **8** Select the **Buttons** tab to change any of the available button settings:



- To assign a button, highlight the item you want to set, select Assign, and then press the button you want to use for that item.
- To restore an item's factory setting, highlight the item and select **Reset**.
- To unassign an item, highlight the item and select None.
- 9 Press OK 🐵.





Your personal information organizer

Say good-bye to paper calendars and throw away those scribbled to-do lists. Your Palm® Treo $^{\text{\tiny M}}$ 800w smartphone is all you need to organize your personal information and keep it with you wherever you go.

You never lose your information, even if your battery is completely drained. All your personal information is backed up each time you synchronize, and your information is kept private when you use the security features available on your smartphone. Also, you can easily share info with others electronically.

Benefits

- Track current, future, and past appointments
- · Make to-do lists that get done
- Set reminders for appointments, birthdays, important tasks, and more

In this chapter

Contacts	173
Calendar	176
Tasks	182
Notes	185

Contacts

Adding a contact

- 1 Press Start and select Contacts.
- 2 Press New (left action key).
- **3** Select the type of contact to create:

Outlook Contact: This type of contact is stored in the Contacts application on your smartphone and synchronizes with the Contacts application in Microsoft Outlook on your computer.

SIM Contact: This type of contact is stored on the SIM card in your smartphone and does not synchronize. If you use the SIM card with another smartphone, you can access any contacts on the SIM card (see <u>Using SIM Manager</u>).

4 Use the 5-way navigator to move between fields as you enter information.



- Take some time to scroll down through all the fields in a new contact. There are fields for multiple addresses, phone numbers, email addresses, and much more.
- TIP Be sure to enter mobile numbers and email addresses in the correct fields so that Inbox and Messaging can find this info when you address a message and Calendar can find your contacts when you want to invite them to meetings.

Here are some helpful tips for entering info:

 To enter complete name or address (work, home, or other) information, tap the arrow on the right side of the line and enter the information in the box that appears. When finished, tap 10

- outside the box to accept the information and close the box.
- To add a caller ID picture that displays when that person calls, select
 Picture, and then select Camera and take a picture, or select an existing picture from Thumbnail View.
- To assign the entry to one or more categories, select **Categories** and then check the categories under which you want this entry to appear.
- To assign a ringtone to the entry, select **Ring tone** and select a tone.
- 5 To add a note to an entry, select the Notes tab.
- 6 After you enter all the information, press OK ⊚.

Viewing or changing contact information

- 1 In the Contacts list (viewed by name), begin entering one of the following for the contact you want to view or edit:
 - · First name
 - · Last name
 - First initial and last initial separated by a space

- Phone number
- 2 Select the entry you want to open.

DID YOU KNOW? When you select a contact entry, you are presented with several options for contacting the person, depending on what information you have entered for the contact. For example, you may see options for calling a number associated with the contact, sending an email to the contact's email address, or calling the last number you dialed to call the contact.

- 3 Press **Menu** (right action key) and select **Edit**.
- **4** Make changes to the entry as necessary.
- 5 Press OK (⊛).

DID YOU KNOW? You can find a contact by company name. Press **Menu** (right action key) and select **View By > Company**. Select a company name to see the contacts who work there.

TIP To view a particular group of contacts, press **Menu** (right action key), select **Filter**, and then select the category you want to view.



Deleting a contact

- 1 In the Contacts list, highlight the contact you want to delete.
- 2 Press Menu (right action key) and select **Delete Contact**.
- 3 Select **Yes** to confirm the deletion.

Customizing Contacts

- 1 Go to the Contacts list.
- 2 Press **Menu** (right action key) and select **Options**.
- 3 Set any of the following options: Show alphabetical index: Displays the alphabet at the top of the Contacts list. You can use this index to find a contact.

Show contact names only: Enables you to fit more names on the Contacts list by hiding everything but the contact's name.

Area code: Specifies the default area code for new contact entries.

4 Press OK 📵

Finding a contact in an online address book

In addition to having contacts on your device, you can also access contact information from your organization's online address book or Global Address List (GAL).

BEFORE YOU BEGIN Do the following:

- Make sure you are accessing Exchange Server 2007 or Exchange Server 2003 upgraded to Service Pack 2.
- Add access to the online address book to your smartphone. See <u>Adding an</u> online address book.
- After adding the online address book, you must synchronize with the Exchange server in order for the Company Directory option to appear.
- 1 Press Start (*) and select Contacts.
- 2 Press Menu (right action key), select Company Directory, enter the name of the contact, and then select Search



Using SIM Manager

You can manage the contacts on your SIM card, including deleting numbers and transferring numbers between the card and the Contacts application on your smartphone.

- 1 Press Start (a) and select Contacts.
- 2 Press Menu (right action key) and select SIM Manager.
- 3 Highlight the contact you want.
- 4 Press Menu (right action key) and select the option you want to edit the contact's information, delete the contact, copy it to the Contacts application, and more.
- 5 Press OK 📵

TIP If a contact has more than one phone number, you can automatically copy one or more of the numbers to the SIM card. In SIM Manager, press **Menu** (right action key) and select **Tools > Options**. Check the boxes next to the numbers you want automatically copied to the SIM card.

Calendar

Displaying your calendar

- 1 Press Start and select Calendar.
- 2 Press **Menu** (right action key) and select **View**.
- **3** Select one of the following views:

Agenda: Shows your daily schedule in list format. Upcoming appointments are bold; past appointments are dimmed.

Day: Shows your daily schedule in day-planner format. Day View displays a horizontal time strip at the top to show at a glance when you have appointments.

Week: Shows your schedule for an entire week

DID YOU KNOW? If your schedule contains a conflict—two appointments that overlap—you can see the conflict in both Day View and Week View.

Month: Shows your schedule for a whole month

- A morning appointment
- An afternoon appointment
- Both morning and evening appointments
- ☐ An all-day event

Year: Shows a calendar for a six-month period.

To Switch views, press the **left action key**. Don't confuse the view name displayed above the left action key with the current view. The left action key displays the name of the next view you see when you press the key.

4 Use the 5-way to move to another day, week, month, or year (depending on the current view).

Creating an appointment

- 1 Press Start and select Calendar.
- 2 Press Menu (right action key) and select New Appointment.

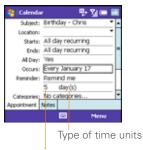


- 3 Enter a subject (description) and a location
- **4** Select **Starts** and select the starting date and time.
- **5** Select **Ends** and select the ending date and time.
- 6 Press OK 🐵.
 - TIP To "pencil in" an appointment, open the appointment, select **Status**, and then select **Tentative**
 - TIP You can display your appointments on your Today screen (see <u>Selecting which items</u> appear on your Today screen).



Adding an alarm reminder to an event

- 1 Create an event and then select it.
- 2 Press **Menu** (right action key) and select **Edit**.
- Select Reminder and then select Remind Me.
- 4 Enter the number of minutes, hours, days, or weeks before the event you would like to receive the alarm.



Number of time units **5** Press **OK** (a).

Creating an untimed event

An untimed event, such as a birthday, anniversary, or vacation, does not occur at a particular time of day. These events

appear as banners at the top of your calendar; they don't occupy blocks of time. For example, "Submit Final Draft" in the screenshot shown below is an untimed event.

DID YOU KNOW? An untimed event can last longer than a day.

1 Press Start and select Calendar.



- 2 Press Menu (right action key) and select New Appointment.
- 3 Enter a subject (description).
- **4** Select the starting and ending dates.
- 5 Select All Day, and then select Yes.
- 6 Press OK (⊛).



- 1 Create an appointment or untimed event, and then select it.
- 2 Press Menu (right action key) and select Edit
- 3 Select Occurs, and then select a repeat pattern. To create a repeat pattern, select Edit pattern and follow the onscreen instructions
 - TIP To enter a birthday or an anniversary, create an untimed event that repeats every year.
- 4 Press OK 🐵.

Sending a meeting request

You can email meeting invitations to contacts who use Microsoft Office Outlook® or Outlook Mobile.

BEFORE YOU BEGIN Create contact entries with email addresses for the people you want to invite to a meeting. You can't access contact entries without email addresses from your calendar.

1 Create an event, and then select it.

- 2 Press Menu (right action key) and select Edit
- 3 Select Attendees. Select Add Required Attendees, and then select the name of the contact you want to invite. To invite other attendees, select Add Required Attendees, and then select the names.
- 4 (Optional) To invite optional attendees, select Add Optional Attendees, and then select the names.

DID YOU KNOW? If you are using Exchange Server 2007 or Exchange Server 2003 with Service Pack 2, you can use your corporate Global Address List to find contact information for an attendee. Select **Attendees**, press **Menu** (right action key), and then select **Find**.

Online. Enter the name of the attendee and select **Find**.

5 Press OK ⊚.

The next time you synchronize, the meeting request is sent to the attendees. When attendees accept your meeting request, the meeting is automatically added to their schedules. When you receive their response, your calendar is updated as well.



Replying to a meeting request

You receive and reply to meeting requests in the Inbox application (see <u>Working with meeting invitations</u>). If you accept or tentatively accept an invitation, it shows up as an appointment in your Calendar.

Marking an event as sensitive

If other people have access to your Microsoft Office Outlook calendar on your computer and you don't want them to see an appointment, you can mark that appointment as private to hide it from other Microsoft Office Outlook users.

- 1 Create an event, and then select it.
- 2 Press Edit (left action key).
- **3** Select **Sensitivity**, and then select one of the following:

Personal: Displays the event on your smartphone and on your computer. Meeting attendees or recipients see "Please treat this as Personal" near the top of an open appointment.

Private: Displays the event on your smartphone and on your computer. Meeting attendees or recipients see "Please treat this as Private" near the

top of an open appointment. If you sync with an Exchange server, other users who can access your folders can't see your private events; they see private events as unavailable time slots.

Confidential: Displays the event on your smartphone and on your computer. Meeting attendees or recipients see "Please treat this as Confidential" near the top of an open appointment.

TIP If you don't see an option on the screen, press **Down** on the 5-way to scroll to other options. For example, when editing an event, you don't see the Sensitivity option until you scroll toward the bottom of the entry.

4 Press OK .

Organizing your schedule

Use categories to view various types of events.

- 1 Create an event, and then select it.
- 2 Press Menu (right action key) and select Edit
- **3** Select **Categories**, and then check the categories that apply to this event.



To add a new category, press

New (left action key), enter the category name, and then press OK (a).



- 4 Press OK (a) two more times.
- 5 After you assign events to categories, press Menu (right action key) and select Filter.
- **6** Select the type of events you want to view

TIP Wonder why you're not seeing all the events in your day? Check to make sure that the filter is set to All Appointments.

Deleting an event

- 1 Highlight the event you want to delete.
- 2 Press Menu (right action key) and select Delete Appointment.

3 Select **Yes** to confirm the deletion.

Customizing Calendar

- 1 Press **Menu** (right action key) and select **Tools** > **Options**.
- 2 On the General tab, set any of the following options:



Start in: Specifies which view is displayed when you open Calendar.

1st day of week: Specifies Sunday or Monday as the first day of the week for all Calendar views

Week view: Specifies whether five, six, or seven days appear in Week View.

Show half hour slots: Specifies whether time slots appear in hour or

10

half-hour increments in Day View and Week View

Show week numbers: Specifies whether week numbers (1–52) appear in Week View.

3 Select the **Appointments** tab and set any of the following options:



Set reminders for new items:

Specifies whether a reminder is automatically added to new events and how long before the event the reminder appears. You can override this setting for individual events.

Show icons: Specifies which icons appear next to events.

- The event has a reminder.
- The event repeats in a specified pattern.
- The event has a note attached
- ♠ A location has been assigned to the event.
- The event is a meeting.
- The event is marked private.
- Not all icons appear in all Calendar views.

Send meeting requests via: Specifies the email account used to send meeting requests.

4 Press OK 📵.

Tasks

You can use Tasks to remind you of tasks you need to complete and to keep a record of completed tasks.

Adding a task

- 1 Press Start and select Programs.
- 2 Select Tasks 7.
- 3 Press Menu (right action key) and select New Task
- 4 Enter a description of the task in the Subject field.
- **5** Set any of the following:



Priority: Specifies the priority level for this task. Later you can arrange your tasks based on the importance of each task.

Status: Indicates whether the task is now completed.

Starts: Specifies when the task begins.

Due: Specifies the due date for the task

Occurs: Indicates if the task repeats at regular intervals and how often it repeats.

Reminder: Sets an alarm for this task and indicates when you want to be reminded.

Categories: Assigns the task to one or more categories.

Sensitivity: Marks this task as Normal, Personal, Private, or Confidential.

Notes: Enables you to enter additional text for the task.

- 6 Press OK 📵.
 - TIP You can also add a task by selecting the Tasks entry bar at the top of the task list screen, entering the task description, and tapping anywhere outside of the entry bar. Select the icons to the left of the bar to set the task as high or low priority.
 - TIP You can display your tasks on your Today screen (see <u>Selecting which items appear on your Today screen</u>).



Checking off a task

1 Highlight the task you want to check off.



2 Press Complete (left action key).

TIP You can also mark a task complete by tapping the check box next to the task on the Tasks list.

DID YOU KNOW? Overdue tasks appear in red.

Organizing your tasks

- 1 In the Tasks list, press **Menu** (right action key) and select **Filter**.
- 2 Select which tasks you want to view: All Tasks, Recently Viewed, No Categories, Active Tasks, Completed Tasks, or a specific category, such as Business or Personal.

- 3 Press **Menu** (right action key) and select **Sort By**.
- 4 Select the sort method: Status, Priority, Subject, Start Date, or Due Date.

Deleting a task

- 1 Highlight the task you want to delete.
- 2 Press **Menu** (right action key) and select **Delete Task**.
- 3 Select **Yes** to confirm the deletion.

Customizing Tasks

- 1 Go to the Tasks list.
- 2 Press **Menu** (right action key) and select **Options**.
- **3** Set any of the following options:

Set reminders for new items:

Automatically adds a reminder to new tasks. The default reminder is set to 8:00 on the morning the task is due. You can override this setting for individual tasks.

Show start and due dates: Displays task start and due dates in the Tasks list

Show Tasks entry bar: Displays the Tasks entry bar at the top of the Tasks list

4 Press OK ^(⊕).

Notes

Notes are a great way to capture thoughts, questions, and meeting notes on your smartphone. You can also create a voice note or add a recording to an existing note.

BEFORE YOU BEGIN To take advantage of all the sync features available in the Notes application, install ActiveSync desktop synchronization software from your Windows Mobile Getting Started CD.

Creating a note

- 1 Press **Start** and select **Programs**.
- 2 Select Notes .
- 3 Press New (left action key).
- 4 Do one of the following:



- Type the text with the keyboard.
- If you turned on writing mode (see <u>Customizing Notes</u>), write the text with the stylus.
- Press Menu (right action key), select Draw, and then draw a sketch with the stylus, crossing at least three ruled lines.
- 5 Press OK .

Creating a voice note

- 1 Press Start and select Programs.
- 2 Select Notes 📜.
- 3 To add a voice recording to an existing note, open the note to which you want to add the recording.



- 4 If the voice note controls are not visible at the bottom of the screen, press Menu (right action key) and select View Recording Toolbar.
- 5 Tap the **Record** icon.



- 6 Speak into the microphone on your smartphone, or hold it close to another sound source.
- 7 When you finish recording, tap the **Stop** icon. A **Recording** ﴿ icon appears
 in the note or note list, depending on
 where you recorded the note.
- 8 Press OK 📵

DID YOU KNOW? You can add several voice notes within a single note.

TIP To play a recording, select the voice note in the Notes list or open the note containing the recording and tap the **Recording** icon. Tap the controls at the bottom of the screen to control playback and volume.

Creating a note from a template

- Go to the Notes list.
- 2 Tap the Show list in the upper-left, and then select Templates.
- **3** Open the template you want to use.
- 4 Enter the information.
- 5 Press OK 📵.
- 6 Rename the note and move it to the appropriate folder. See <u>Organizing your</u> <u>notes</u> for details.

TIP To create a new template, open the note you want to save as a template. Press Menu (right action key) and select Rename/Move. Select Name, and then enter a name for the template. Tap the Show list, select Template, and press OK.

JUR PERSONAL INFORMATION ORGANIZER

Organizing your notes

You can rename your notes, move notes to another folder, and move notes between your smartphone and an expansion (storage) card.

- **1** Go to the Notes list and highlight a note you want to move.
- 2 Press **Menu** (right action key) and select **Rename/Move**.
- 3 Select Name and enter a new name for the note.
- **4** Select **Folder**, and then select the folder in which you want to store the note.
- 5 Select Location, and then select Main memory or Storage Card.
- 6 Press OK (18).

To create a new folder, go to the Notes list, tap the **Show** list in the upper-left, and then select **Add/Delete**. Select **New**, enter a name for the folder, and then press **OK**.

Deleting a note

- **1** Go to the Notes list and highlight the note you want to delete.
- 2 Press Menu (right action key) and select Delete.

3 Select **Yes** to confirm the deletion.

Customizing Notes

- 1 Go to the Notes list.
- 2 Press **Menu** (right action key) and select **Options**.
- 3 Set any of the following options:

Default mode: Makes the default entry mode either Writing or Typing. The default is Typing; if you change it to Writing, you can write notes directly on the screen using the stylus.

Default template: Specifies the default template for new notes.

Save to: Indicates the default location where new notes are stored.

Record button action: Specifies what happens when you press the Side button to record a voice note while in another application: whether the Notes application opens or whether you stay in the current application.

10

- TIP To use the Record button action feature, you need to assign the Side button to open Notes. See Reassigning buttons.
- TIP Tap **Global Input Options** to set options for entering text in any application (see <u>Setting input options</u>).
- 4 Press OK .



Your Microsoft Office and other document tools

Your Palm® Treo™ 800w smartphone enables you to take your office with you—including your Microsoft Office files. With Microsoft Office, you can carry, create, view, and edit Microsoft Word and Excel files directly on your smartphone. You can also view, carry, and manage PowerPoint files on your smartphone. You can keep updated copies of the files on both your smartphone and your computer so that you can work on them in the most convenient location at any time.

You can also use PDF Viewer to view PDF files on your smartphone.

Benefits

- Manage Word, Excel, and PowerPoint files on your smartphone
- Improve productivity by taking important docs, spreadsheets, and presentations with you
- · Work with PDF files

In this chapter

Synchronizing your Microsoft Office files	191
Word Mobile	193
PowerPoint Mobile	199
Excel Mobile	200
PDF Viewer	211

Synchronizing your Microsoft Office files

You can create and edit Microsoft Office files on your computer or on your smartphone and then synchronize the files so that changes you make show up on both your computer and your smartphone. To synchronize Microsoft Office files, you must first choose Files as one of your synchronization options on your smartphone if you did not do so during desktop software installation; see Setting up your computer for synchronization and Changing which applications sync.

The procedure for synchronizing files is different for computers running Windows XP and computers running Windows Vista.

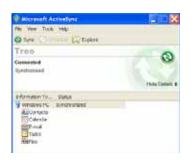
Synchronizing files: Windows XP

 Connect your smartphone to your computer with the USB sync cable.

NOTE Most ActiveSync desktop software options are available only when your smartphone is connected to your computer.

2 On your computer, double-click the ActiveSync® (a) icon in the taskbar in the lower-right corner of your computer screen to open the ActiveSync desktop software window

TIP If the ActiveSync icon does not appear in the taskbar, go to **Start**, navigate to **Programs**, and then select **Microsoft ActiveSync** to open the ActiveSync window.



3 Under Information Type, double-click Files to view a list of all synchronized files. 11

TIP If Files doesn't appear under Information
Type, open the **Tools** menu and select **Options**. Make sure the **Files** box is checked.

- 4 Do any of the following:
 - To delete a file from the file sync folder on your computer and from your smartphone, highlight the file name and click **Remove**.
 - To copy a file from your computer to your smartphone, click Add, browse to and highlight the file, and then click Open.

NOTE If you receive an error while synchronizing files, make sure that all of the files you're trying to sync are closed on both your computer and on your smartphone.

Synchronizing files: Windows Vista

 On your computer, copy or save the file to the Documents\Documents on username's Smartphone folder.

DID YOU KNOW? The Documents on username's Smartphone folder is created when you select the option to sync Files.

2 Connect your smartphone to your computer with the USB sync cable. Synchronization takes place automatically.

Where are the changes I made to my file?

Don't look for the changed file in its original location on your computer. Only the synchronized version contains the changes, and that version is in the ActiveSync file sync folder. To find this folder, do one of the following:

Windows XP: On your computer desktop, double-click the file sync folder icon. This is a shortcut to the file sync folder.

Windows XP: In ActiveSync desktop software, double-click **Files**. The location of the file sync folder appears in the File Synchronization Settings dialog box (under On this computer, synchronize the files in this folder)

Windows Vista: Open the Documents\
Documents on *username*'s Smartphone folder.

On your smartphone, you can find the synchronized file by doing either of the following:

- Press Start (a), select Programs, and then select Office Mobile (b). Select the application that opens the file: Word Mobile (a), Excel Mobile (a), or PowerPoint Mobile (a).
- Press Start (a), select Programs, and then select File Explorer (b). Tap the Show list in the upper-left and select My Device > My Documents.

Word Mobile

You can create and edit documents and templates and save them as DOC, RTF, TXT, and DOT files. You can also edit Microsoft Office Word documents and templates that you create on your computer. However, keep in mind that some of the information and formatting may be lost when you save the document on your smartphone.

DID YOU KNOW? If you have a PDF file (.pdf), you can view the file using PDF Viewer. Press Start, select Programs, and then select PDF Viewer (see PDF Viewer).

The following features are not supported in Word Mobile:

- Backgrounds.
- Bidirectional text.
- Document protection.
- Metafiles
- Artistic page borders. Lined page borders are supported.
- Password-protected files. Remove password protection on your computer before opening the file on your smartphone.
- Shapes and text boxes.
- Smart tags.

The following features are partially supported in Word Mobile:

Picture bullets. Regular bullets are supported.

Revision marks. Documents appear as though all revisions were accepted; if the document is saved, revision marks are lost.

Table styles. Some or all of the formatting is lost if the document is saved.



Underline styles. Unsupported styles are mapped to one of the four supported styles: regular, dotted, wavy, or thick/bold/ wide.

Legacy Pocket Word files. You can open PSW files, but if you edit a file, you need to save it in DOC, RTF, TXT, or DOT format.

The following features are not supported on your smartphone, but they remain in the file so that when you open the file on your computer, they appear as expected:

Fonts and font sizes. Original fonts are listed on your smartphone and are mapped to the closest font available

Footnotes, endnotes, headers, and footers.

Lists. Indented lists are mapped to the closest indentation level supported by Word Mobile

Page breaks. Although not displayed, all page breaks, except a break placed at the end of a document, are retained in the document

Creating a document

- 1 Press Start (*) and select Programs.
- 2 Select Office Mobile
 - Select Word Mobile W
- 4 The first time you open Word Mobile, a new document opens. Otherwise, press **New** (left action kev).
- 5 Enter the text of the document.
- 6 Press **OK** (a) to save the file. When you save a new document, it is automatically named after the first several words in the file

Opening an existing document

- 1 Press Start (*) and select Programs.
- 2 Select Office Mobile 3 Select Word Mobile W
- 4 In the document list, select the document you want to open.

TIP To zoom in or out, press View, select Zoom, and then select the zoom level.

Creating a document from a template

- 1 Go to the documents list.
- 2 Tap the Show list in the upper-left and select Templates. If you don't see Templates in the Show list, select More Folders to access this folder.
- 3 Open the template you want to use.
- 4 Press **Menu** (right action key) and select **File** > **Save As**.
- **5** Select **Name** and enter a new name for the file.
- 6 Select the Folder list, and then select the folder where you want to save the file.
- 7 Select the **Type** list, and then select the format in which you want to save the file.
- 8 Select the **Location** list, and then select **Main Memory** or **Storage Card**.
- 9 Select Save.

TIP To create a new template, open the document you want to save as a template. Press Menu (right action key) and select File > Rename/Move. Select Name and enter a name for the template. Select Folder, and then select Template. Press OK.

Finding or replacing text in a document

- Open the document containing the text you want to find.
- 2 Press Menu (right action key) and select Edit > Find/Replace.
- 3 Select Find what and enter the text you want to find.
- 4 (Optional) Check the Match case box to find text that matches the capitalization in the text you entered step 3.
- 5 (Optional) Check the Match whole words only box to find only full words that match the text you entered in step 3.
- 6 Select Find to locate the first instance of the text you entered in step 3, or select Replace and enter the replacement text.
- 7 Select Next to find the next instance of the text, or select Replace to replace it. To replace all instances of the text, select Replace All.
- **8** When you see a message that the search is done, press **OK** (a).



Moving or copying text

- 1 Open the document containing the text you want to move or copy.
- 2 Highlight the text you want to move or copy.
- 3 Press Menu (right action key) and select Copy to copy the text, or select Cut to move the text.
- 4 Open the document where you want to insert the text and position the cursor where you want the text to appear.
- **5** Press **Menu** (right action key) and select **Paste**.

Saving a copy of a document

NOTE If a document was previously saved on a computer, any unsupported formatting may be lost when you save the file.

- 1 Open the document you want to copy.
- 2 Press **Menu** (right action key) and select **File** > **Save As**.
- 3 Select **Name** and enter a new name for the file.

- 4 Select the Folder list, and then select the folder where you want to save the file.
- 5 Select the Type list, and then select the format in which you want to save the file.
- 6 Select the Location list, and then select whether you want to store the file on your smartphone (Main memory) or on an expansion card (Storage card).
- 7 Select Save.

Formatting text

- 1 Open the document you want to format.
- 2 Highlight the text you want to format.
- 3 Press **Menu** (right action key) and select **Format** > **Font**.
- **4** Set any of the following options for the highlighted text:

Font: Specifies the typeface.

Font color: Specifies the color.

Size: Specifies the point size.

Bold: Indicates whether the text appears normal or thick.

Italics: Indicates whether the text appears upright or slanted.

Underline: Indicates whether the text appears with an underscore.

Highlight: Indicates whether the text appears with a yellow highlight.

Strikethrough: Indicates whether the text appears with a line through it.

5 Press **OK** (a) to return to the document.

Formatting paragraphs and lists

- 1 Open the document you want to format.
- **2** Position the cursor in the paragraph you want to format.
- 3 Press Menu (right action key) and select Format > Paragraph.
- **4** Set any of the following options:

Alignment: Aligns the text paragraph with the left, right, or center of the page.

List: Creates a bulleted or numbered list.

Indentation: Changes the paragraph margins.

- **Left:** Sets the left margin for the entire paragraph.
- **Right:** Sets the right margin for the entire paragraph.
- **Special:** Lets you indent the first line or set a hanging indent.
- **By:** Sets the size of the special indentation
- **5** Press **OK** (a) to return to the document.

TIP You can also use the Formatting toolbar to create a list and to align text. To indent text in lists, you must use the Formatting toolbar.

Checking spelling in a document

- 1 Open the document you want to check.
- 2 Press Menu (right action key) and select Tools > Spelling. To check the spelling of specific text, highlight it before you select the Spelling command.
- **3** If an unknown or misspelled word is encountered, do one of the following:



- Select the correct word in the list if the word is spelled incorrectly.
- Select **Ignore** if the word is spelled correctly.
- Select Add to add a new word to the spelling dictionary.

Organizing your documents

You can rename your documents, move your documents to another folder, and move your documents between your smartphone and an expansion card.

- 1 Go to the documents list.
- 2 Highlight a file.
- 3 Press Menu (right action key) and select Rename/Move.
- 4 Select Name and enter a new name for the document
- 5 Select the Folder list, and then select the folder to which you want to move the document.
- 6 Select the Location list, and then select Main memory or Storage card.
- 7 Press OK .

- To Create a new folder, go to the documents list, tap the **Show** list in the upper-left and select **Add/Delete**. Select **New**, enter a name for the folder, and then press **OK**.
- When you go to a folder, you can easily search your documents by sorting by type.

Deleting a document

- 1 Go to the documents list.
- 2 Highlight the document you want to delete.
- 3 Press **Menu** (right action key) and select **Delete**.
- 4 Select Yes to confirm the deletion.

Customizing Word Mobile

- 1 Go to the document list.
- 2 Press Menu (right action key) and select Tools > Options.
- **3** Set any of the following options:

Default template: Sets the default template for new documents.

Save to: Sets the default location where new documents are stored

Display in list view: Sets the types of files that appear in the documents list.

4 Press OK .

PowerPoint Mobile

With PowerPoint Mobile, you can open and view slide show presentations created on your computer. Many presentation elements such as slide transitions, animations, and URL links are also supported. Microsoft Office PowerPoint® features not supported on your smartphone include the following:

- Notes written for slides
- · Rearrangement or editing of slides
- Files created in PPT format earlier than Microsoft PowerPoint 97
- HTML files in HTM and MHT formats

Playing a presentation

NOTE If a presentation is set up as a timed slide show, the slides advance automatically. Presentations pause during zooming.

- 1 Press Start and select Programs.
- 2 Select Office Mobile
- 3 Select PowerPoint Mobile
- In the presentation list, highlight the presentation you want to play.
- 5 Press Center .
- 6 Do any of the following:
 - Press Right ▶ to advance to the next slide or Left ◀ to view the previous slide.
 - Press Menu (right action key), select Go to Slide, and then select the slide you want to view.
 - Select **Next** or **Previous** to play animations.
 - Press Menu (right action key), select Zoom In, and then select b to zoom in or to zoom out. To scroll within the current slide, tap and drag the slide. To return to the slide show, select .
 - Press Menu (right action key) and select End Show.



Setting presentation playback options

- 1 Open the presentation for which you want to change the settings.
- 2 Press Menu (right action key) and select Set up show.
- 3 On the Orientation tab, select the orientation you want. To select the orientation that best fits your smartphone screen, select **Default**.
- 4 Select the Playback tab, and check the Override playback options for all files box.
- **5** Set any of the following options:

Show without animation: Turns off builds and other animations.

Show without slide transition: Turns off transition effects between slides.

Use timings, if present: Enables the timings recorded with each slide in a presentation. If a presentation is set up as a timed slide show, the slides advance automatically. Presentations pause during zooming.

Loop continuously: Advances to the first slide after playing the last slide in a presentation.

6 Press OK (18).

To turn the presentation into a continuously looping slide show, check both the **Use slide timings, if present**, and the **Loop continuously** boxes.

Excel Mobile

With Excel Mobile you can create and edit workbooks and templates on your smartphone. You can also edit workbooks and templates that you create on your computer. However, keep in mind that you may lose some of the information and formatting when you save the workbook on your smartphone.

Note the following formatting considerations:

Alignment: Vertical text appears horizontal

Borders: Appear as a single line.

Cell patterns: Patterns applied to cells are

removed.

Fonts and font sizes: The original font is listed on your smartphone and mapped to the closest font available. Original fonts reappear on your computer.

Number formats: Microsoft Office Excel® 97 conditional formatting is displayed in Number format.

Formulas and functions: Unsupported functions are removed, and only the returned value of the function appears. Formulas containing the following are also converted to values:

- An array or array argument, for example,
 =SUM({1;2;3;4})
- External link references or an intersection range reference
- References past row 16384 are replaced with #REF!

Protection settings: Most protection features are disabled but not removed. However, password protection is removed. You must remove the password protection in Microsoft Office Excel on your computer before opening the file on your smartphone.

Zoom settings: Worksheet-specific zoom settings are not retained. The zoom setting applies to the entire workbook.

Worksheet names: Names that refer to other workbooks, arrays, array formulas, or intersection ranges are removed from the name list, causing those formulas to be resolved as "#NAME?" All hidden names are not hidden

AutoFilter Settings: AutoFilters that cause rows to be hidden are supported. Use the Unhide command to display hidden rows. Other AutoFilters are removed, but you can use the AutoFilter command in Excel Mobile to perform similar functions.

Chart Formatting: All charts are saved as they appear in Excel Mobile. Unsupported chart types are changed to one of these supported types: Column, Bar, Line, Pie, Scatter, and Area. Background colors, gridlines, data labels, trend lines, shadows, 3D effects, secondary axes, and logarithmic scales are turned off.

The following features aren't supported in Excel Mobile and are removed or modified when you open a workbook on your smartphone:



- · Hidden, dialog, and macro sheets
- VBA modules
- Text boxes
- Drawing objects and pictures
- Lists
- · Conditional formats and controls
- · Pivot table data (converted to values)

Creating a workbook

- 1 Press **Start** and select **Programs**.
- 2 Select Office Mobile 📴.
- 3 Select Excel Mobile
- 4 The first time you open Excel Mobile, a new workbook appears. Otherwise, press New (left action key).
- **5** Highlight a cell where you want to enter text or other info.
- 6 Enter the info in the cell, and then press **Enter** (4).
- **7** Repeat steps 4 and 5 to enter the remaining info.
- 8 Press OK (a) to save the file. When you save a new workbook, it is automatically named and placed in the workbook list.

Creating a workbook from a template

- 1 Go to the workbook list.
- 2 Tap the Show list in the upper-left and select Templates. If you don't see Templates in the Show list, select More Folders to access this folder.
- **3** Open the template you want to use.
- 4 Press **Menu** (right action key) and select **File** > **Save As**.
- **5** Select **Name** and enter a new name for the workbook.
- 6 Select the Folder list, and then select the folder where you want to save the workbook.
- 7 Select the Type list, and then select the format in which you want to save the workbook.
- 8 Select Save
 - TIP To create a new template, highlight the workbook you want to save as a template. Press Menu (right action key), select Rename/Move, select Name, and then enter a name for the template. Select the Folder list and select Templates. Press OK.

Viewing a workbook

- 1 Press Start (2) and select Programs.
- 2 Select Office Mobile
- 3 Select Excel Mobile ...
- 4 In the workbook list, select the workbook you want to view.
- **5** Press **View** (left action key) and select any of the following:

Full Screen: Shows as much data as possible on the screen. To return to the normal view, select **Restore** in the upper-right.

Zoom: Sets the magnification level so that you can easily read the worksheet.

Sheet: Lets you switch to a different worksheet.

DID YOU KNOW? You can also switch worksheets by selecting the sheet list at the bottom of the screen.

Split: Divides the window into two scrollable areas. To move the split bar, tap and drag it. To remove the split bar, select **View** > **Remove Split**.

Freeze Panes: Locks rows and columns so they remain visible while you scroll. Highlight the cell at the point at which you want to lock before you select this command. To unlock the rows or columns, select View > Unfreeze Panes.

Toolbar: Indicates whether the toolbar appears onscreen.

Status Bar: Indicates whether the status bar appears onscreen.

Show: Indicates whether headings and scroll bars appear onscreen.

To jump to a cell or region, press Menu and select Edit > Go To. Select Cell reference or name and enter the target cell info or select Current region. Select OK.

Calculating a sum

- 1 Press View (left action key) and select **Toolbar**.
- 2 Highlight the cell where you want to insert the sum.
- 3 Select **■**.



- 4 Tap and drag the stylus across the cells you want to add.
- 5 Press Enter (4).
 - For simple calculations, use the Calculator (see Calculator).

Entering a formula

- 1 Highlight the cell where you want to enter the formula.
- 2 Enter equals sign (=) followed by any values, cell references, name references, operators, and functions.

 Examples:
 - =(B4/25)+100
 - =Revenue-Expenses
- 3 Press Enter ◀.
 - To insert a symbol, place the cursor where you want the symbol. Press **Menu** and select **Insert > Symbol**. Highlight the symbol you want to insert, and select **Insert**.

Referring to a cell or range in a formula

1 Open the workbook where you want to refer to a cell or range in a formula.

- 2 Begin entering a formula in a cell.
- **3** Select the cell, or select an entire range to set the reference.
- 4 Finish entering the formula and press **OK** (a).
 - TP To refer to a cell from another worksheet in your formula, enter the worksheet name followed by an exclamation point (!) and the cell, range, or name reference.

 Example: =Sheet1!Earnings
 - TIP To create a 3-D reference in your formula, specify two or more sheets in a workbook; use a colon between the first and last worksheet names.

Example: =SUM(Sheet2:Sheet6!\$A\$2:\$C\$5)

Inserting a function

- 1 Open the workbook where you want to insert the function.
- 2 Press **Menu** (right action key) and select **Insert** > **Function**.



- Select the Category list, and then select the type of function you want to insert.
- 4 Select the Function list, and then select the specific function you want to insert.
- 5 Select OK.

Entering a sequence automatically

- Highlight both the cells containing the info you want to automate and the adjacent destination cells.
- 2 Press **Menu** (right action key) and select **Edit** > **Fill**.
- Select the **Direction** list, and then select the direction you want to populate.

- 4 Select the **Fill type** list, and then select **Series**
- 5 Select the Series type list, and then select the type of series you want. If you select Date or Number, enter a Step value increment.

Fig. Select **Autofill** as the series type to quickly fill cells with repetitive data such as numbers or repeated text. Autofill takes the content of the first cell in the highlighted row or column and copies it down or across the rest of the selection

6 Select OK.

Adding cells, rows, and columns

- 1 Open the workbook you want.
- 2 Highlight the area where you want to insert elements.
- 3 Press Menu (right action key) and select Insert > Cells.
- **4** Select how you want to insert the elements:

Shift cells right: Inserts the same number of new cells as the number of cells you highlighted horizontally in step 2—for example, if you selected an area



containing two cells horizontally (say, A1 and B1), selecting Shift cells right inserts two horizontal cells; so the original A1 and B1 (and their contents) are now C1 and D1. The highlighted area and all cells on the right move the same number of columns—two in this example—to the right.

Shift cells down: Inserts the same number of new cells as the number of cells you highlighted vertically in step 2—for example, if you selected an area containing two cells vertically (say, A1 and A2), selecting Shift cells down inserts two vertical cells; so the original A1 and A2 (and their contents) are now A3 and A4. The highlighted area and all cells below it move the same number of rows—two in this example—down.

Entire row: Inserts the same number of new rows as the number of cells you highlighted vertically in step 2—for example, if you selected an area containing two cells vertically (say A1 and A2), selecting Entire row inserts two rows; so the original rows 1 and 2 (and their contents) are now rows 3 and 4. The rows containing the highlighted

area and all rows beneath it move the same number of rows—two in this example—down.

Entire column: Inserts the same number of new columns as the number of cells you highlighted horizontally in step 2—for example, if you selected an area containing two cells horizontally (say, A1 and B1), selecting Entire column inserts two columns; so the original columns A and B (and their contents) are now columns C and D. The columns containing the highlighted area and all columns on the right move the same number of columns—two in this example—to the right.

5 Select OK.

TIP To add a new worksheet, press Menu and select Format > Modify Sheets. Select Insert, enter a name for the worksheet, and then press OK. To change the order of the worksheets, highlight a worksheet you want to move, select Move Up or Move Down, and then press OK.

Formatting cells

- 1 Open the workbook you want to format.
- 2 Highlight the cells you want to format.
- 3 Press Menu (right action key) and select Format > Cells.
- 4 Select any of the following tabs: Size: Sets the row height and column width.

Number: Sets the type of information the cells contain.

Align: Sets whether text wraps within the highlighted cells, and sets horizontal and vertical alignment position.

Font: Sets the typeface, color, size, and style attributes.

Borders: Turns borders on and off for various cell edges, and sets the border and background colors.

5 Press OK (19)

TIP To name the highlighted cell or range of cells, press Menu and select Insert > Define Name. Enter the name and select Add. Press OK.

Formatting rows and columns

- I Open the workbook you want to format.
- 2 Highlight the rows or columns you want to format.
- 3 Press Menu (right action key) and select Format > Row or Format > Column.
- 4 Select any of the following:

AutoFit: Adjusts the size of the highlighted rows or columns to their contents.

Hide: Hides the highlighted rows or columns.

Unhide: Displays hidden rows or columns in the highlighted area.

pro you know? You can adjust the column and row size by tapping and dragging the right edge of the column or the bottom edge of the row. To automatically fit rows and columns to their contents, double-tap the lower edge of the row heading or the right edge of the column heading.



Renaming a worksheet

- 1 Open the workbook containing the worksheet you want to rename.
- 2 Press Menu (right action key) and select Format > Modify Sheets.
- 3 In the Sheets list, highlight the worksheet you want to rename.
- 4 Select Rename, enter a new name for the worksheet, and then press OK (a) twice.

Sorting info in a worksheet

- **1** Highlight the cells you want to sort.
- 2 Press **Menu** (right action key) and select **Tools** > **Sort**.
- **3** Select the **Sort by** list, and then select the primary sort column.
- 4 Check the **Ascending** box to sort in ascending order. Leave the box unchecked to sort in descending order.
- 5 (Optional) Select the Then by lists, and then select second- and third-level sorting options.

- 6 Check or uncheck the Exclude header row from sort box to indicate whether you want to sort the header row.
- 7 Select OK.

Filtering info in a worksheet

- 1 Highlight the cells that contain the info you want to filter.
- 2 Press Menu (right action key) and select Tools > AutoFilter. A list appears at the top of each related column.
- 3 Select one of the new lists, and then select a filter. This hides all rows that do not include the selected filter.
- 4 (Optional) Do any of the following:
 - Select the other lists, and select other filters
 - To display all rows again, select the filter lists, and select All.
 - To turn off filtering, press Menu and select Tools > AutoFilter again.

DID YOU KNOW? You can also create custom filters where you specify comparisons. Select the filter lists, and then select **Custom**.

Creating a chart

- 1 Open the workbook in which you want to create a chart.
- 2 Highlight the cells you want to include in the chart.
- 3 Press **Menu** (right action key) and select **Insert** > **Chart**.
- 4 Select the type of chart, and then press **Next** (right action key).
- 5 Confirm the area you want the chart to include, and then press Next (right action key).
- 6 Select the data layout, and then press **Next** (right action key).
- 7 Check the boxes to indicate whether the first row and column represent labels.
- 8 Select whether you want the chart to appear as a separate worksheet within the current workbook, or as part of the current worksheet.
- **9** Press **Finish** (right action key).

Formatting or changing a chart

1 Open the workbook that contains the chart you want to format.

- Open the chart.
- 3 Press Menu (right action key) and select Format > Chart.
- 4 Select any of the following tabs:

Titles: Specifies the title of the chart and headings, whether a legend appears, and the placement of the legend.

Scale: Specifies the minimum and maximum scales for charts with x and y axes.

Type: Specifies the chart style. You can use this setting to convert your chart to a different format.

Series: Lets you add, modify, format, or delete related data points without affecting the info in your worksheet.

5 Press OK .

Finding or replacing info in a workbook

- 1 Open the workbook containing the info you want to find.
- 2 Press **Menu** (right action key) and select **Edit** > **Find/Replace**.



- 3 Select Find what and enter the info you want to find.
- 4 (Optional) Check the **Match case** box to find text that matches the capitalization in any text you entered in step 3.
- 5 (Optional) Check the Match whole words only box to find only full words that match any text you entered in step 3.
- 6 Select Find to locate the first instance of the info you entered in step 3, or select Replace and enter the replacement info.
- 7 Select Next to find the next instance of the info, or select Replace to replace it. To replace all instances of the info, select Replace All.
- 8 When you see a message that Excel Mobile is done searching, press **OK** (**).

Organizing your workbooks

You can rename your workbooks. You can also move them to another folder or move them between your smartphone and an expansion card.

1 Go to the workbook list.

- 2 Select a file.
- 3 Press Menu (right action key) and select File > Rename/Move.
- **4** Select **Name** and enter a new name for the workbook
- 5 Select the **Folder** list, and then select the folder to which you want to move the workbook
- 6 Select the Location list, and then select Main memory or Storage card.
- 7 Press OK 📵
 - When you go to a folder, you can easily search your files by sorting by type.

Deleting cells, rows, and columns

- 1 Open the workbook containing the elements you want to delete.
- 2 Highlight the area you want to delete.
- 3 Press Menu (right action key) and select Edit > Delete Cells.
- **4** Select how you want to remove the elements:

Shift cells left: Deletes the highlighted cells and moves all cells on their right to the left.

Shift cells up: Deletes the highlighted cells and moves all cells below them up.

Entire row: Deletes the entire row(s) in which the highlighted cells are located, and moves all rows below up.

Entire column: Deletes the entire column(s) in which the highlighted cells are located, and moves all columns on their right to the left.

NOTE Excel Mobile adjusts formulas to reflect the new cell locations. However, a formula that refers to a deleted cell displays the #REF! error value.

5 Select OK.

- TP To delete a workbook, go to the workbook list and highlight the workbook you want to delete. Press **Menu** (right action key) and select **Delete**. Select **Yes** to confirm.
- TP To delete a worksheet, press Menu (right action key) and select Format > Modify Sheets. Highlight the worksheet you want to delete, and then select Delete. Select Yes and press OK.

Customizing Excel Mobile

- 1 Go to the workbook list
- 2 Press Menu (right action key) and select Options.
- **3** Set any of the following options:

Template for new workbook:

Specifies the default template for new workbooks

Save new workbooks to: Specifies where new workbooks are stored.

Files to display in list view: Specifies which types of files appear in the workbook list.

4 Press OK 🐵

PDF Viewer

Picsel PDF Viewer lets you view PDF files whether they are saved to your smartphone, attached to email messages, stored on an expansion card inserted into your smartphone's expansion card slot, or downloaded from the web. You can customize the document display.



Opening a file

- 1 Press Start (*) and select Programs.
- Select PDF Viewer .
- 3 Select the Folder list, and then select the folder containing the file you want to open. If you're not sure which folder the file is in, select All Folders.



- **4** Select the **Type** list, and then select the type of file you want to open.
- 5 Select the file you want.
 - TIP Select the **Name**, **Folder**, or **Date** column heading to sort the displayed files by that heading. This can help you find the file you want more quickly.
 - TIP To close the Open screen without making a selection, select **Cancel**.

- **6** (Optional) Optimize your viewing of the file by doing any of the following:
 - To switch between zoom mode and pan mode, press **Center** .
 - In zoom mode, to zoom in and out while viewing the PDF file, press
 Up ▲, or Down ▼.
 - In pan mode, to pan the display in a given direction, press Right ▶,
 Left ◄, Up ▲, or Down ▼.
 - TIP To see which mode you are in, press **Show**Mode (left action key) to display the mode icon. Press **Hide Mode** (left action key) to hide the mode icon.
 - To rotate the displayed page, press
 Menu (right action key) and
 select Page > Rotate.
 - TIP To open a file you have recently opened, open PDF Viewer, press Menu (right action key), and then select Recent > [the name of the file you want].

Moving around in PDF files

To move around within a PDF file, do either of the following:

- To go to the next or previous page in the file, press Menu (right action key) and select Page > Next Page or Page > Previous Page.
- To go to the first or last page in the file, press Menu (right action key) and select Page > First page or Page > Last page.

Customizing the display

You can choose between two views for displaying PDF files. You can also hide the toolbar to view the file on the full screen.

- 1 Press **Menu** (right action key) and select **Page**.
- 2 Select one of the following options:

Fit to width: Resizes the file so that the width of the file matches the width of the screen; you may need to scroll up or down to view the entire document.

Fit to page: Resizes the file so that the entire file—both width and height—fits on one screen.

Customizing PDF Viewer

- 1 Press **Menu** (right action key) and select **Settings**.
- 2 Select any of the following options:

Clear History: Deletes all files from the Recent list (see Opening a file).

Files: Specifies which file types can be opened with PDF Viewer.

About: Contains information on the PDF Viewer application.





Your application and info management tools

Your Palm® Treo™ 800w smartphone comes equipped with a variety of tools for managing and organizing your information. Get the most out of your smartphone: Install some of the thousands of business, education, or leisure-time applications available. After you use your smartphone to create or capture important business and personal information, use one of several options to share the info with others. Insert expansion cards (sold separately) for a compact and limitless answer to the storage dilemma. And because there's one on your smartphone, you never need to carry a separate calculator.

Benefits

- · Locate info in any application
- Install applications, games, and other software
- Keep others up-to-date with meaningful business and personal information
- · Store, carry, and exchange info
- Always have a calculator with you

In this chapter

Finding information	7
Installing applications	9
Removing applications	22
Sharing information	23
Beaming information	23
Using expansion cards22	25
Calculator23	31



Quickly find who or what you're looking for by using one of these search features:

- Lookup: Find and dial your contacts by name or phone number. See <u>Dialing by</u> contact name for details.
- **Search:** Look through the text in all the applications on your smartphone.
- File Explorer: Browse through the files and folders on your smartphone or on an expansion card.
- Global Address List Lookup: Look up names in your online corporate address list.
- Email message search: Display only those messages whose senders, recipients, or subjects match the text you enter (see <u>Finding messages</u>).

For information on opening and closing apps, see Opening and closing applications.

Using Search

Search for files and other items stored in the My Documents folder on your

smartphone or on an expansion card. You can search by file name or by words located in the item. For example, you can search for words within notes, appointments, contacts, and tasks.

DID YOU KNOW? Contacts on your SIM card do not appear in the search results list.

- 1 Press Start and select Programs.
- 2 Select Search 🔍 .



PID YOU KNOW? You can also open Search by pressing **Option** + **left Shift**.

3 Select Search for, and then enter the file name, word, or other info you want to find.



- TIP If you've looked for an item before, select the **Search for** list, and then select the item in the list
- TIP When two or more words are entered in the Search for field, the search results contains only items that contain all of the words.
- **4** Select the **Type** list, and then select the kind of information you want to find.
 - TIP If you are searching for information in certain applications, such as Inbox or Word Mobile, select **Advanced** for more search options.
- **5** Press **Search** (left action kev).
- 6 Use the 5-way to select and view an item from the results of the search. A storage card symbol appears next to the names of files that are located on an expansion card.

Exploring files and folders

You can use File Explorer to browse the contents of folders on your smartphone or on an expansion card. The root folder on your smartphone is named My Device. My

Device is similar to My Computer (Windows XP) or Computer (Windows Vista) on your computer.

- 1 Press Start and select Programs.
- 2 Select File Explorer 🛴.
- 3 Select the folder you want to explore. If the folder you want is not displayed, tap the **Show** list in the upper-left and select **My Device** to view all folders.

Show list

File toplacer

My Documents
Name
Sort by

Invinces

My Music

My Pictures

My Ringiones

Personal

Templates

No you know? When the items in a folder are displayed, you can sort them by name, date. size, or type. Select the Sort by list in the upper-right, and then select the sort method.

TIP The storage card symbol appears next to the names of files that are stored on an expansion card.

- 4 Do any of the following:
 - · To open an item, select it.
 - To quickly delete, rename, beam, or email an item, highlight the item. press and hold **Center** to open the shortcut menu, and then select the appropriate command.
 - · To move a file to another folder. highlight the item, press and hold **Center** to open the shortcut menu, and select Cut or Copy. Open the destination folder, press and hold Center to open the shortcut menu, and then select Paste.
 - · To highlight multiple items, tap and drag the stylus.

IMPORTANT Do not delete any files that you cannot identify. These files may be

required for your smartphone to function properly.

Installing applications

Your smartphone comes with several built-in and ready-to-use applications. You can also install any of the additional software included on the Windows Mobile Getting Started CD as well as other third-party applications that are compatible with Microsoft Windows Mobile® 6 Professional edition devices, such as business software, games, and more.

Applications you download to your computer are likely to be in a compressed format such as 7IP If the file is compressed, you need to use a decompression utility on your computer, such as WinZip, to decompress the file before you install the application on your smartphone.

These instructions tell you how to install basic files onto your smartphone. Some software uses an installer or wizard to guide you through the process. For details,



consult the documentation that came with the software

TIP If an application does not have a Microsoft Mobile to Market certificate, you see a message indicating that the application is untrusted. If this occurs, you can indicate whether you want to continue the installation.

Installing bonus software from the CD

The Windows Mobile Getting Started CD includes several bonus software applications that you can install on your smartphone. You can install these applications when you install the desktop software, or you can install them later.

- Insert the Windows Mobile Getting Started CD into the CD drive on your computer.
- Click Add Programs (Windows XP) or Bonus Software (Windows Vista).
- **3** Click the name of the application you want to install.
- **4** Click **Install** (on the right side of the screen).
- **5** (Optional) Repeat steps 3 and 4 to install additional applications.

6 Synchronize your smartphone with your computer to install the application(s) on your smartphone.

Installing third-party applications

When installing third-party applications, note the following:

- Install only apps that are designed for Microsoft Windows Mobile 6 Professional.
- Apps designed for Microsoft Windows Mobile 6 Standard or any edition of Windows Mobile 5.x software are not compatible with your smartphone.
- If you can try a free or trial version of the software before purchasing it, you can test it first to make sure it works properly.



DID YOU KNOW? You can purchase a third-party application that lets you run Palm OS® applications on your smartphone.

Installing applications from the Internet

You can use Internet Explorer Mobile to install Windows Mobile apps in the CAB file format directly from the Internet. For files in any other format except CAB, you must first download the files to your computer and then install them to your smartphone by synchronizing.

- 1 Make sure your phone is on and that vou are in a coverage area (see Turning vour phone on).
- 2 Press Start and select Internet Explorer.
- 3 Go to the page that contains the link to the application you want to download.
- 4 Press Left ◀ or Right ▶ to highlight the link to the file, and then press Center to start the download process.
- 5 When the download has finished, press Start and select Programs.
- 6 Select File Explorer .

- Go to the My Documents folder in File Explorer.
- Tap the file you downloaded to start the installation program.

Installing applications from your computer

REFORE YOU REGIN To install an application from your computer to your smartphone, you must first install the desktop synchronization software on your computer (see Installing ActiveSvnc desktop software: Windows XP or Installing Windows Mobile Device Center: Windows Vista).

- Open My Computer or Windows Explorer on your computer.
- 2 Double-click the icon representing your smartphone.
- 3 Copy the application file(s) into the folder
- Connect your smartphone to your computer to synchronize and install the application(s) on your smartphone.



Installing applications onto an expansion card

BEFORE YOU BEGIN To install an application from your computer to an expansion card, you must first install the desktop synchronization software on your computer (see Installing Windows Mobile Device Center: Windows Vista).

- Insert the expansion card into the expansion card slot (see <u>Inserting and</u> removing expansion cards).
- 2 Connect your smartphone to your computer using the USB sync cable.
- 3 Open My Computer or Windows Explorer on your computer.
- **4** Double-click the icon representing your smartphone.
- **5** Navigate to the folder representing the expansion card.
- **6** Copy the application file(s) into the expansion card folder.

Removing applications

To free up memory on your smartphone, you can remove applications that you no longer use. You can remove only applications, patches, and extensions that you install; you cannot remove the built-in applications that reside in the Read-Only Memory (ROM) portion of your smartphone.

- 1 Press Start and select Settings.
- 2 Select the **System** tab, and then select **Remove Programs**.



3 Highlight the application that you want to remove.

DID YOU KNOW? Built-in applications that cannot be deleted are not listed in the Remove Programs list

- 4 Select Remove
- 5 Select **Yes** to confirm the deletion.

Sharing information

Your smartphone comes equipped with a variety of options for sharing information, so that you can choose the quickest, most convenient way to send your info or to receive info from another device.

- When you have a file open in a program such as Notes or PowerPoint Mobile, you can easily share a file by selecting the Menu, and then selecting Send via E-Mail or Beam File.
- In Microsoft Outlook®, you can insert a
 picture or attach a note or other file to
 an email. You can also receive pictures
 and attachments (see <u>Your email</u>).

- You can attach a picture, video, or sound file to a multimedia message (see <u>Creating and sending a multimedia</u> <u>message</u>).
- You can synchronize to share info between your smartphone and your computer or between your smartphone and Microsoft Exchange Server 2003 or 2007 (see Synchronizing information).
- If you are near someone, you can beam files and applications between your smartphone and your neighbor's device using the IR port or Bluetooth® wireless technology (see <u>Beaming information</u>).
- You can also store files on an expansion card and share the expansion card (see <u>Using expansion cards</u>).

Beaming information

Your smartphone is equipped with an IR (infrared) port that enables you to beam information to another device with an IR port. The IR port is located on the side of your smartphone closest to the stylus, near the top. You can also beam using the



built-in Bluetooth wireless technology on your smartphone.

The normal range for beaming with IR is about 20 centimeters (8 inches). The maximum range for beaming with Bluetooth technology is about 9 meters (30 feet). Performance and range are affected by physical obstacles, radio interference from nearby electronic equipment, and other factors.

By default, the beaming option on your smartphone is turned off. You need to turn the beam option on before you can beam using either the IR port or Bluetooth wireless technology.

TIP For best results, the path between the two devices must be clear of obstacles, and both devices kept stationary. If you have difficulty beaming, shorten the distance and avoid bright sunlight.

DID YOU KNOW? The type of information you can beam depends on the type of device you are beaming to. Other Windows Mobile 6 Professional devices are always compatible with your Treo 800w smartphone.

Turning on the beam option

- 1 Press Start and select Settings.
- 2 Select the **Connections** tab, and then select **Beam** .
- 3 Check the Receive all incoming beams box.

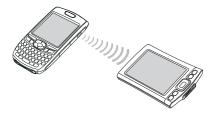
Beaming an entry or file

- Highlight the entry or file you want to beam
- 2 Press Menu (right action key) and select Beam... (the menu item changes names based on the type of item you highlighted).
- 3 Do one of the following:



Bluetooth: When the name of the receiving device appears, select **Tap to send** to begin the transfer. A blue icon indicates a Bluetooth connection.

IR: Point the IR port on your smartphone directly at the IR port of the receiving device. A red icon indicates an IR connection



- 4 Wait for **Done** to appear next to the name of the receiving device before you continue using your smartphone.
 - The regional setting determines the list of characters that can be used when info is beamed between devices. If you try to send or receive a character that is not on the list, it appears as a question mark (see Setting-display formats).

Receiving beamed information

- 1 Turn on your screen if it is not already on.
- 2 If you are beaming over an IR connection, point the IR port on your smartphone directly at the IR port of the transmitting device.
- 3 When the Receiving Data message appears, select Yes to receive the beam.

The If you can't receive beamed info, press Start and select Settings. Select the Connections tab, and then select Beam. Make sure the Receive all incoming beams box is checked. If you still can't receive info, try a soft reset (see Resetting your smartphone).

Using expansion cards

The expansion card slot on your smartphone enables you to add miniSD cards to extend the storage capacity of



your smartphone. For example, miniSD expansion cards can store the following:

Games

Applications

Databases

- Pictures
- Videos
- videos
- MP3 audio files
- Email attachments

Expansion cards are sold separately.

TIP We recommend that you purchase preformatted expansion cards. To format a card on your own, you need to connect a card reader (sold separately) to your computer.



Inserting and removing expansion cards

- Open the expansion card slot door by sliding your fingernail or another thin object into the notch.
- 2 Hold your smartphone with the screen facing you and hold the card with the label facing you. The notch on the card should be toward the bottom of your smartphone.
- 3 Insert the card into the expansion card slot until you feel it lock into place and you hear the confirmation tone.



4 To remove an expansion card, press in and release the card.



5 After you feel the expansion card slot eject the card, remove the card from the slot.





Opening applications on an expansion card

After you insert an expansion card into the expansion card slot, you can open any of the applications stored on the expansion card.

TP To run an application on an expansion card, your smartphone must have enough free space in the internal memory to run the application.

- 1 Insert the expansion card into the expansion card slot.
- 2 Press Start and select Programs.
- 3 Select File Explorer 🛴.
- **4** Tap the **Show** list in the upper-left and select **Storage Card**.

Show list



5 Select the application you want to open.

Saving files to an expansion card

You can save space on your smartphone by saving files to an expansion card. For example, when you create new Word Mobile documents, notes, Excel Mobile workbooks, pictures, videos, and audio files, you can save them directly to an expansion card. Saving files to an expansion card also makes it easy to share those files with others. (Some applications may not support this feature.)



- Insert an expansion card into the expansion card slot.
- 2 Open the application from which you want to save the info
- **3** Press **Menu** (right action key) and select **Options**.
- 4 Select the option for where to save info, and then select Storage Card. The option name changes depending on the application you are in.
 - TIP If you don't see a Save to option on the Options screen, look on the other tabs (if present). If you still can't find a Save to list, the application may not support this feature.
- 5 Press OK (⊛).

Moving info between your smartphone and an expansion card

- 1 Insert an expansion card into the expansion card slot.
- **2** Open the application from which you want to move the info.
- **3** Go to the list view, tap the **Show** list in the upper-left, and select the file or application you want to move.

- 4 Press Menu (right action key) and select Rename/Move
 - Select the **Location** list, and then select where you want to move the info: **Storage Card** or **Main Memory**.
- 6 Press OK ⊚.

Copying or moving applications and files between your smartphone and an expansion card

- 1 Insert the expansion card into the expansion card slot.
- 2 Press **Start** and select **Programs**.
- 3 Select File Explorer 👢.
- 4 Select the file or application you want to copy or move (see <u>Exploring files and folders</u>).
 - Your applications are usually located in the My Device/Program Files folder.
- 5 Press Menu (right action key) and select Edit > Copy or Edit > Cut.
- **6** Go to the folder where you want to place the selected item.



- 7 Press Menu (right action key) and select Edit > Paste.
- 8 Press OK 📵.

Viewing available expansion card memory

- 1 Insert the expansion card into the expansion card slot.
- 2 Press Start and select Settings.
- 4 Select the Storage Card tab.
- 5 Press OK (⊛).

Exploring files on an expansion card

- 1 Insert the expansion card into the expansion card slot.
- 2 Press Start and select Programs.
- 3 Select File Explorer .
- **4** Tap the **Show** list in the upper-left and select **Storage Card**.
- **5** Select the folder or files you want to view.
- 6 Press OK (18).

Renaming an expansion card

If you change the contents of an expansion card, you may at some point want to rename the card to better match its contents.

TIP Before copying information to or renaming the files or folders on an expansion card, or renaming the card itself, make sure the card is not write-protected. See the instructions that came with your card for details.

- 1 Insert the expansion card into the expansion card slot.
- 2 Press Start and select Programs.
- 3 Select File Explorer 📜.
- 4 Tap the Show list in the upper-left and select My Device.
- **5** Highlight the current expansion card name (Storage Card by default).
- 6 Press **Menu** (right action key) and select **Rename**.
- 7 Enter a new name for the card.
- 8 Press OK 📵

Encrypting an expansion card

When you encrypt an expansion card, the info on the card can be read only by your smartphone—so no one can see what's on the card if it gets lost or stolen.

- 1 Insert the expansion card into the expansion card slot.
- 2 Press Start and select Settings.
- 3 Select the System tab, and then select Encryption.
- 4 Check the Encrypt files placed on storage cards box.

NOTE If your organization enforces an encryption policy, you can see that the box is checked but cannot uncheck it.

Calculator

You can use Calculator for basic arithmetic calculations, such as addition, subtraction, multiplication, and division.



Performing calculations

- 1 Press Start and select Programs.
 - Select Calculator 🥘.
- 3 Enter numbers and perform calculations, including the following:
 - Clears the last digit in a multi-digit entry.

12

- © Clears the current calculation or the displayed number.
- Calculates the reciprocal of a number.
- Calculates percentage.
- Calculates the square root of a number.
- Switches a number between negative and positive.
- TIP You can paste numbers into Calculator as well as copy calculation results to be pasted into another app.
- For more advanced calculations, use Excel Mobile. See Excel Mobile for details.

Using the Calculator memory

 To store a displayed number, tap the box to the left of the entry box or press M.
 An M appears in the box.

DID YOU KNOW? When you store a number in memory, it replaces the number that is currently stored.

- To add the displayed number to the number stored in memory, tap or press P.
- To display the number stored in memory, tap MR or press R.
- To clear the memory, tap (MC) or press L.



Your personal settings

Customizing is optional. But why not personalize your Palm® Treo™ 800w smartphone to make it match your lifestyle and work even harder for you?

You can easily customize the sounds, fonts, screen colors, and more on your smartphone. Take advantage of various levels of security. Prevent making an accidental (and expensive) phone call by locking the keyboard. Some preference settings can help extend the life of your battery. There are lots of ways to make your smartphone work better for you.

Benefits

- · Conserve power
- Secure your phone and your data
- · Make your screen easy to read
- · Streamline smartphone use

In this chapter

Today screen settings	235
System sound settings	236
Display and appearance settings	238
Application settings	240
Locking your smartphone and info	245
System settings	250
Connection settings	256

Today screen settings

Selecting your Today screen background

- 1 Press Start (a) and select Settings.
- 2 On the Personal tab, select Today 🔊.



- 3 On the Appearance tab, check the Use this picture as the background box.
- 4 Select Browse.
- **5** Select the picture you want to use.
- 6 Press OK (⊛).

TP To change the color theme for your smartphone, select a new theme from the Appearance tab in Today Settings (see Changing the system color scheme).

Selecting which items appear on your Today screen

- 1 Press Start (a) and select Settings.
- 2 On the Personal tab, select **Today** 🔊 .
- 3 Select the **Items** tab



- 4 Check the boxes next to the items you want to appear on your Today screen, and uncheck any items that you do not want to appear.
- 5 (Optional) Highlight an item and select Move Up or Move Down to change the order in which items appear on the Today screen.
- 6 (Optional) Highlight an item and select **Options** (if available) to configure the settings for the item. Press **OK** (a) to return to Today Settings.



7 Press OK .

DID YOU KNOW? There are lots of third-party plug-ins available for your Today screen.

Changing the clock format

You can change the format of the clock on the Today screen from digital to analog and back. If you select analog format, a clock icon appears displaying the time.

- **1** Tap and hold the clock display with the stylus.
- 2 Select Analog or Digital.

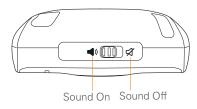
System sound settings

When you're in a meeting, at the movies, or anywhere that silence is required, you can immediately silence all sounds on your smartphone, including Calendar notifications and system sounds. This does not mute the speaker during phone calls.

Silencing sounds

- 2 To hear all sounds again, slide the Ringer switch to Sound On ()).

When you slide the Ringer switch back to the Sound On position, it restores the previous sound settings. For example, if the smartphone ring volume is set to the loudest setting and you slide the Ringer switch to Sound Off, you do not hear the smartphone ring. When you move the Ringer switch back to Sound On, the smartphone ring volume is still set to the loudest setting.



TIP Can't get music to play out of the built-in MP3 player? Check the Ringer switch. If it's set to Sound Off, you won't be able to hear music

DID YOU KNOW? Your smartphone includes a silent alarm that can vibrate even when the Ringer switch is set to Sound Off

Selecting Sounds & Notifications

- 1 Press Start and select Settings.
- 2 On the Personal tab, select **Sounds & Notifications** (2).
- **3** On the Sounds tab, set any of the following options:



Events: Turns sounds on/off for system warnings and error messages.

Programs: Turns sounds on/off in the applications on your smartphone.

Notifications: Turns alarms and reminders on/off in the applications on your smartphone.

Screen taps: Turns sounds associated with tapping the screen on/off, and sets the volume level when this sound is turned on.

Hardware buttons: Turns sounds associated with pressing buttons on/off, and sets the volume level when this sound is turned on.

To record, preview, delete, and send sounds, select the **Manage** tab. To record a sound, press **Menu** and select **New Sound**. To play a sound, select it and press **Play** (left action key). To delete a sound, highlight it and press **Backspace**. To send a sound, highlight it, press **Menu**, and select **Send Sound**.

4 Select the **Notifications** tab and set any of the following options:





Event: Specifies the action for which you want to change the settings. The remaining options vary based on the event you select.

Play sound: Lets you turn the sound on/off for the selected event. To select a different sound, select the list to the right of this setting, and then select a different sound. To preview the sound, select Play Sound, and then select Play.

Repeat: Indicates whether the sound plays more than once, if turned on.

Display message on screen: Indicates whether a notification message appears onscreen for the selected event.

Vibrate: Indicates whether your smartphone vibrates to notify you about the selected event

5 Press OK 🐵.

Display and appearance settings

Adjusting the brightness

- 1 Press Option and then press .
- 2 Press Left ◀ and Right ▶ to adjust the brightness.
- 3 Press OK (⊛).

Changing the text size and clarity

- 1 Press Start and select Settings.
- 2 Select the **System** tab, and then select **Screen** 3.
- 3 Select the Text Size tab.
- 4 Press Left ◀ and Right ▶ to adjust the text size.
- 5 Select the Clear Type tab.
- **6** To smooth the edges of screen fonts, check the **Enable Clear Type** box.

7 Press OK 📵.

Setting display formats

- 1 Press Start (*) and select Settings.
- 2 Select the System tab, and then select Regional Settings .



- 3 On the Region tab, select a region from the list. The region selection sets the default format settings.
- 4 (Optional) Select any of the following tabs to customize the format settings:

Number: Sets the decimal symbol and number of decimal places, the digit grouping symbol and group size, list separators, negative number sign symbol and format, leading zero display,

and measurement system (metric vs. U.S.)

Currency: Sets the currency symbol and position, the decimal symbol and position, digit grouping symbol and group size, and negative number format

Time: Sets the time style, separators, and AM and PM symbols.

Date: Sets the short date style, separators, and long date style.

5 Press OK .

Aligning the screen to correct tapping problems

Occasionally, your screen may need to be readjusted. You know your screen needs adjustment when the wrong feature is activated when you tap the screen. To fix the problem, align the screen.

- 1 Press Start (a) and select Settings.
- 2 Select the **System** tab, and then select **Screen** 3.
- 3 On the General tab, select **Align Screen**.



- 4 Tap the screen where indicated.
- 5 Press OK (⊛).

Changing the system color scheme

TIP You can also set the background for your Today screen (see <u>Selecting your Today screen background</u>).

- 1 Press Start and select Settings.
- 2 On the Personal tab, select **Today** 🔊.
- **3** On the Appearance tab, select a theme in the list.
- 4 Press OK 📵.

Changing screen orientation

Landscape orientations are determined by which hand you would hold the stylus in.

- 1 Press Start and select Settings.
- 2 Select the **System** tab, and then select **Screen** 3.
- 3 Select the General tab.
- 4 Select an orientation:
 - Portrait
 - · Landscape (right-handed)
 - · Landscape (left-handed)

5 Press OK (18).

Application settings

Arranging the Start menu

You can change the seven applications listed on the Start menu. You can still access the remaining applications by selecting Programs from the Start menu, and then selecting the application's icon.

- 1 Press **Start** and select **Settings**.
- 2 On the Personal tab, select **Menus** 🛅 .



3 Check the boxes next to the applications you want to see in the Start menu.

- 4 Press OK (18).
 - TIP Don't forget the six icons across the top of the Start menu. They're the apps you opened most recently, and it's easy to get back to them: just use the 5-way to select one of the icons

Reassigning buttons

You can use Buttons Settings to select which applications to associate with many of the buttons and key combinations on your smartphone.

- 1 Press Start and select Settings.
- 2 On the Personal tab, select **Buttons** ...



- 3 On the Program Buttons tab, highlight the button or key combination you want to change in the Button list. The hardware buttons are mapped to the following items:
 - Start 🔊 = Start menu
 - OK (⊕) = OK/Close
 - Option + Phone/Send = Messaging
 - Option 🕽 + Start 🗷 = Calendar
 - Option () + OK (⊛) = Task Manager
 - Hold Side = Windows Media Player
- 4 Select the Assign a program list, and then select the application you want to assign to the button or key combination you selected in step 3.
- 5 Select the Up/Down Control tab and adjust the settings for the Up ▲ and Down ▼ buttons on the 5-way.
- 6 Press OK 🐵.

Setting up voice commands

IMPORTANT The Voice Command application is available only for English, French, and German.



Voice commands enable you to use speech to execute some commands on the Start menu and the Programs screen.

- Assign the **Hold Side** button to Voice Command. See <u>Reassigning buttons</u> for details
- 2 Press Start and select Settings.
- On the Personal tab, select Voice Command.



- 4 Select Enabled.
- 5 Select the items you want to enable. If an item is highlighted and the Options button is active, select **Options** to choose the features you want enabled for the highlighted item.

6 Select **Notifications** and select the options for how you want to receive voice command notifications

Using voice commands

IMPORTANT Do not use voice commands in your car until you read the End user notice about this kind of usage; see <u>Enduser notice</u>.

- 1 Set the **Ringer** switch at the top of your smartphone to **Sound On** ■)).
- 2 Hold your device about nine inches (230mm) away from your mouth, and then press and release the assigned Voice Command button (see <u>Setting up</u> voice commands). A tone plays and a microphone icon appears at the top of your screen.
- **3** In a clear voice say the command. For example:
 - To access Help, say "Help." After Voice Command finishes speaking, a microphone icon appears at the top of your screen. Say your answer. For example, say "General" to access general Help topics.

- To access your Calendar, say "Start Calendar"
- To access your music, say "Start Windows Media." After Voice Command finishes speaking, a microphone icon appears at the top of your screen. Say your answer.

The You can move quickly through voice commands by stopping the voice command response before it finishes. When Voice Command responds, you can press the Voice Command button before it completes the question. After the microphone icon is visible, you may say your answer.

Setting input options

- 1 Press Start (a) and select Settings.
- **3** On the Input Method tab, set any of the following options:



NOTE The Input Method options you specify apply only to entering info using the screen. You can still enter info using your smartphone's keyboard regardless of the onscreen input method you choose.

Input method: Specifies which onscreen input method you want to use:

- Block Recognizer: Use a single stroke to write letters, numbers, symbols, and punctuation, which are then converted into typed text. Use gestures to enter Return and Backspace.
- **Keyboard**: Tap keys on the onscreen keyboard to enter text.



 Letter Recognizer: Write individual letters, numbers, and punctuation, which are converted into typed text.

Large/Small keys: If you selected Keyboard, select whether to use large or small onscreen keys. If you select Large keys, check the box if you want to use gestures for the space, backspace, shift, and enter keys.

Options: If you selected Letter Recognizer, select Options and select the options you want.

4 Select the **Word Completion** tab and set any of the following options:



Suggest words when entering text: Indicates whether word suggestions appear as you enter text. You can also

specify how many letters you want to enter before a suggestion appears, how many suggestions you want to see, and whether a space appears after you insert a suggested word.

TIP To enter a suggested word, press **Down** to highlight the suggestion, and then press **Center** to accept it.

Clear Stored Entries: Deletes the database of word suggestions.

Enable Auto Correct: Indicates whether common misspellings such as "teh" are corrected automatically.

5 Select the **Options** tab and set any of the following options:



Voice recording format: Specifies the format in which you save voice notes.

Default zoom level for writing:

Specifies the initial size of text entered from onscreen writing methods.

Default zoom level for typing:

Specifies the initial size of text entered using the keyboard.

Capitalize first letter of sentence:

Specifies whether the first letter of a sentence automatically appears in uppercase, without requiring you to press a Shift key.

Scroll upon reaching the last line:

Specifies whether the display automatically scrolls when you select the last line of visible info.

6 Press OK 📵

Locking your smartphone and info

Your smartphone includes several features that help you protect your smartphone from inadvertent use and keep your information private. The built-in security software lets you use your smartphone for emergency calls, such as dialing your national emergency number (such as 911 or 112), even if it is locked.

Keyguard: Manually disables all buttons and the screen's touch-sensitive feature to prevent accidental presses in your briefcase or pocket.

Auto-Keyguard and touchscreen

lockout: Automatically enables Keyguard after a period of inactivity and lets you disable the screen's touch-sensitive feature during an active call.

Phone Lock: Requires a PIN to turn on your phone so you can make and answer calls.



System password lock: Requires a password to see any information on your smartphone.

TIP To avoid accidentally pressing onscreen buttons while you're holding your smartphone up to your ear to speak, you can disable the screen's touch-sensitive feature during active calls. When the screen's touch-sensitive feature is disabled, you must use the 5-way navigator to access items on the screen.

Locking your keyboard (Keyguard)

By default, your keyboard locks so that you don't accidentally press buttons or activate screen items while your smartphone is in a pocket or bag.

- To dismiss Keyquard, press Center .
- To manually turn on Keyguard when your smartphone screen is on, press
 Option + Power/End .

TIP If you're using a headset or hands-free device and your smartphone is in a pocket or bag, you can manually turn on Keyguard during a call to prevent accidental key presses.

Turning on Auto-Keyguard

Auto-Keyguard enables you to configure the Keyguard feature.

- 1 Press Start and select Settings.
- 2 On the Personal tab, select **Keyguard** .
- 3 Select the **Auto-Keyguard** list and then disable the Auto-Keyguard feature or set the period of inactivity that passes before the keyboard automatically locks.



4 Press OK .

Locking your screen

- 1 Press Start and select Settings.
- 2 On the Personal tab, select **Keyguard** .

- 3 Check or uncheck the Disable touchscreen box to determine whether the screen's touch-sensitive feature is enabled during a call.
- 4 Press OK (⊛).

Locking the SIM card

You can lock your SIM (Subscriber Identity Module) card to prevent unauthorized use of your mobile account. When your SIM card is locked, you must enter the PIN to power on your phone to make or receive calls, except for emergency numbers. The SIM card remains locked even if you move the card to another phone.

When your SIM card is locked, you can unlock your SIM card by trying to turn on the phone. A dial pad appears for you to enter your PIN.

BEFORE YOU BEGIN

- Make sure your phone is on and that you're inside a coverage area (see Turning your phone on).
- Get your default PIN from your wireless service provider.

- 1 Press Start (a) and select Settings.
- On the Personal tab, select **Phone** 👢
- Select the **Security** tab.



- 4 Check the Require PIN when phone is used box
- 5 Enter the PIN and press **Done** (left action key).
- 6 Press OK .
- **7** Turn your phone off to activate the phone lock feature.

Your SIM card locks when you turn off your phone and turn it back on. When your SIM card is locked, you can unlock your SIM card by entering your PIN.

DID YOU KNOW? You can permanently unlock your SIM card. From your Today screen, press Menu and select Preferences > Phone Settings. Select the Security tab, and uncheck the Require PIN when phone is used box

NOTE You need your PIN number to edit your PIN number or remove the locking feature. If you enter an incorrect PIN more times than allowed by your wireless service provider, the SIM card locks. After the SIM card locks, you need the PUK (PIN Unlock Kev) to unlock the SIM card. Contact your wireless service provider for more information and the PLIK

Locking your smartphone

To protect your personal information, you can lock the system so that you need to enter your password to access any of your information or use other features of your smartphone.

IMPORTANT If you lock your system, you must enter the exact password to unlock it. If you enter an incorrect password, you are given another chance. Each time an incorrect password is entered, you are

given progressively longer time periods between your chances to enter the password. If you forget the password, you need to perform a hard reset to resume using your smartphone. Performing a hard reset deletes all the entries in your smartphone. However, you can restore all previously synchronized info the next time you sync (see Synchronizing information).

- 1 Press **Start** and select **Settings**.
- On the Personal tab, select **Lock** \nearrow .
- 3 On the Password tab, check the Prompt if device unused for box to turn on the password feature.
- 4 Select the first list, and then select how long a period of inactivity must pass before you are prompted to enter a password to unlock the system.
- 5 Select the **Password type** list, and then select a format for your password:
 - Strong alphanumeric: A strong alphanumeric password must contain at least 7 characters and must contain a combination of letters, numerals, and punctuation. You must press Option or Alt before entering numerals or punctuation.

Simple PIN: A simple PIN must contain at least 4 characters and includes numerals only. You do not need to press Option before entering the PIN numerals.

- **6** Select **Password** and enter your password.
- **7** Select **Confirm** and enter the password again.
- 8 (Optional) Select the **Hint** tab and enter a hint to help you recall your password.
- 9 Press OK 📵

TIP If you lock your smartphone and use a Simple PIN as the password, you can dial an emergency number by entering the number in the password field and pressing **Phone/Send**. You do not need to press Option before entering the number. However, if you select Strong alphanumeric as the password type, you must first press **Option** twice before entering an emergency number in the password field.

Entering owner information

You can enter personal information that you want to associate with your smartphone, such as your name, company name, and

phone number. You can also set whether you want this information to appear when you turn on your smartphone. If you lose your smartphone, this feature can help the person who finds it return it to you.

- 1 Press Start and select Settings.
- 2 On the Personal tab, select Owner Information 2.
- **3** On the Identification tab, enter any of the information you want to include.



- 4 Select the **Notes** tab and enter any additional text you want to include.
- 5 Select the **Options** tab and check the boxes to indicate which info (if any) you want to appear on the screen when you turn on your smartphone.
- 6 Press OK .



TIP You can also display your Owner Information on your Today screen. See Selecting which items appear on your Today screen for details.

System settings

Setting the date and time

Use Clock & Alarms Settings to set the time zone, time, and date for your home location and a location that you visit.

To set the display format for the date and time, see <u>Setting display formats</u>.

- 1 Press Start and select Settings.
- 2 Select the **System** tab, and then select **Clock & Alarms** .
- 3 On the Time tab, select Home.



- **4** Select the first list, and then select the time zone for your home location.
- 5 Select the hour, and then press Up ▲ or Down ▼ to increase or decrease the hour setting. Repeat this process for the minute, seconds, and AM/PM settings.
- **6** (Optional) Select **Visiting** and set the info for a location that you visit often.
- 7 Press OK 📵.
- 8 If prompted, select **Yes** to accept your changes.

Synchronizing the date, time, and time zone with the network

By default your smartphone synchronizes the date, time, and time zone with your wireless service provider's network whenever your phone is on and you are inside a coverage area.

- 1 Press Start (a) and select Settings.
- 2 Select the System tab, and then select Clock & Alarms .
- 3 Select the More tab.
- 4 To disable this option, uncheck the Enable local network time box.
- 5 If you want to keep your smartphone date and time set for your selected location, uncheck the Use network time zone box

Setting system alarms

System alarms let you set alarms that are not associated with a task or appointment. For example, you can use your smartphone as an alarm clock when you travel, or set alarms to remind you when it's time to take medication or pick up the kids.

- 1 Press **Start** and select **Settings**.
- 2 Select the System tab, and then select Clock & Alarms .
- 3 Select the Alarms tab.



- 4 Check a box to turn on that alarm.
- 5 Select the description next to the box you checked and enter a description for the alarm.
- 6 Select the days of the week you want the alarm to go off. You can select multiple days for each alarm.
- 7 Select the time you want the alarm to go off, and then press **OK** (a).
- 8 Select the alarm if icon, and then check the boxes to select how you want the alarm to go off. You can choose a flashing light, a single sound, a repeating sound, or vibration.

13

- TIP To change the alarm sound, select the alarm sound icon, select the **Play Sound** list, and then select the alarm sound you want to use.
- 9 Press OK (®) twice.
- 10 If prompted, select Yes to accept your changes.

Managing identity certificates

Your smartphone may include preinstalled certificates. Certificates are digital documents that are used to authenticate and exchange information on networks. Certificates can be issued for a user, a device, or a service.

- 1 Press Start and select Settings.
- 2 Select the System tab, and then select Certificates
- 3 Select any of the following tabs:

 Personal: Displays certificates that
 establish your identity when you log in
 to a secured network, such as a
 corporate network.

Intermediate: Displays certificates issued by the root whose purpose is to then issue personal certificates.

Root: Displays certificates that identify the computers, such as servers, to which you connect. These certificates help prevent unauthorized users from accessing your smartphone and information.

- 4 Press OK 🐵
 - TIP To delete a certificate, tap and hold the certificate in the list, and then select **Delete** from the shortcut menu.

Enabling error reporting

Error Reporting sends info that helps diagnose application errors for devices running Windows Mobile® software. When an error is detected, a text file is created. You can review the file and choose whether you want it delivered to Microsoft technical support. The information is used by programming groups at Microsoft for quality control and is not used for tracking individual users or installations for any marketing purpose. The info that is collected is technical info about the state of

your system when the error occurred. No documents (or any info contained in them) are intentionally sent with the report. To ensure further security, the report is transmitted via a secure connection and is kept confidential and anonymous in a limited-access database.

DID YOU KNOW? This error reporting method meets the privacy regulations of the European Union (EU) as well as the Fair Information Practice Principles of the Federal Trade Commission in the United States. To view the Fair Information Practice Principles, visit the Federal Trade Commission website at www.ttc.gov/reports/privacy3/fairinfo.htm.

Your smartphone must be connected to your computer when you send the error report—provided your computer is connected to the Internet.

- 1 Press **Start** and select **Settings**.
- 2 Select the **System** tab, and then select **Error Reporting** .
- **3** Select whether you want to enable or disable error reporting.
- 4 Press OK 📵

How much storage space do I have left?

- 1 Press and hold OK (18).
- 2 Select any of the following tabs:

Main: Displays the amount of memory assigned to your applications and info, as well as the amount of memory in use versus the available memory.



TIP If storage memory is low, consider using an expansion card to store files (see <u>Using expansion cards</u>). If program memory is low, close some applications to avoid slow smartphone performance (see <u>Closing applications</u>).

Storage Card: Displays the amount of memory available on an expansion card that is inserted in the expansion slot on your smartphone.

Running Programs: Lists the applications that are in use on your smartphone. To switch to an application, highlight it and select **Activate**. To close an application, highlight it and select **Stop**. To close all open applications, select **Stop All**.



3 Press OK 📵.

Optimizing power settings

- 1 Press Start and select Settings.
- 2 Select the **System** tab, and then select **Power** .

3 On the Battery tab, view the power remaining in your battery.



An easy way to check the battery level is by tapping the **Battery** icon in the title bar.

4 Select the **Advanced** tab and set whether your smartphone screen turns off automatically after a specified period of inactivity. You can assign different intervals for battery power and external power.



5 Press OK (18).

The To conserve additional battery power, adjust the display backlight setting. Press Start and select Settings. Select the System tab, and then select Backlight. On the Battery Power tab, set whether the display backlight turns off automatically after a period of inactivity.

Turning wireless services on/off

 From the Today screen, press
 Menu (right action key) and select Wireless Manager.



- 2 Turn the wireless features on your smartphone on/off. Select All to turn all wireless features on/off.
 - TIP To change the settings for one of the displayed wireless features, press **Menu** (right action key) and select the wireless feature you want to change.
- 3 Press OK 📵

You can also turn wireless services on and off by tapping the **signal-strength** icon at the top of the screen, and selecting **Wireless Manager**.



Connection settings

Managing ISP settings

Your smartphone is already set up to connect to the Internet using a high-speed data connection on your wireless service provider's network. To connect to the Internet, simply start Internet Explorer Mobile

For special situations, such as connecting to your internet service provider (ISP) or to a remote access server (RAS), you can set up another connection.

BEFORE YOU BEGIN Obtain the following information from your ISP or system administrator:

- ISP server phone number or access point
- Username
- Password
- 1 Press Start (a) and select Settings.
- 2 Select the **Connections** tab, and then select **Connections**

- 3 On the Tasks tab, select **Manage** existing connections.
- 4 Select the Modem tab.
- 5 Highlight the connection you want to view or change, and then select Edit, or to create a new connection, select New
- **6** Follow the onscreen instructions to edit or create the connection.

Connecting to a VPN

If you want to use your smartphone to access your corporate email account or other files on your corporate server, you may need to set up a VPN (virtual private network). A VPN enables you to log in to your corporate server through the company's firewall (security layer).

BEFORE YOU BEGIN Check with your company's system administrator to see if a VPN is required to access the corporate network. If you need a VPN, you must purchase and install a third-party VPN client to use this feature.

Ask your corporate system administrator for the following information:

- · Your username and password
- Your server's domain name
- Your server's TCP/IP settings
- Your server's host name or IP address
- 1 Install your third-party VPN client (see Installing applications).
- 2 Press Start (a) and select Settings.
- 3 Select the **Connections** tab, and then select **Connections**
- 4 On the Tasks tab, select Add a new VPN server connection.
- 5 Follow the onscreen instructions to enter the settings provided by your corporate system administrator.
 - TIP To manually start a data connection on your wireless service provider's network or another network, go to **Connections Settings**, and on the Tasks tab, select **Manage existing connections**. Tap and hold the connection you want to start, and then select **Connect** from the shortcut menu.

Setting up a proxy server

- 1 Press Start (a) and select Settings.
- 2 Select the **Connections** tab, and then select **Connections**
- 3 On the Tasks tab, select Set up my proxy server.
- **4** Check both boxes near the top of the screen.
- **5** Select **Proxy server** and enter the proxy server name.
- 6 Press OK (⊛).
 - TIP To change settings such as the port number, proxy server type, or credentials, select **Advanced**.

Ending a data connection

If your service plan includes minutes-of-use fees for data connections, you can reduce costs by ending the data connection when you've finished browsing the web.

1 Use the stylus to tap one of the data connection icons () on the title bar.

Select **Disconnect** from the shortcut menu.

Submitting usage information to Microsoft

You can choose to anonymously send information about your smartphone usage to Microsoft. This information helps the company improve its Windows Mobile software. No personal information is submitted, you do not incur data charges, and participation is voluntary.

- 1 Press Start (a) and select Settings.
- 2 Select the System tab, and then select Customer Feedback .
- 3 Select Send Feedback.



Troubleshooting

Although we can't anticipate all the questions you might have, this chapter provides answers to some of the most commonly asked questions. For additional information and answers to other common questions, visit www.palm.com/ treo800w-support.

In this chapter

Transferring info from another device
Reinstalling the desktop software
Resetting your smartphone
Performance
Screen
Network connection
Synchronization
Email
Web
Camera
Third-party applications
Making room on your smartphone
Voice quality

Transferring info from another device

For information on transferring your info from a previous Windows Mobile® device or from a Palm OS® device to your new Palm® Treo™ 800w smartphone, visit www.palm.com/treo800w-support for instructions.

DID YOU KNOW? You can purchase a third-party application that lets you run Palm OS® applications on your smartphone.

Windows Mobile, you can go to the Microsoft Windows Mobile website. Search for Palm devices for information.

IMPORTANT Do not use a backup utility to transfer your info from another device to your new smartphone. This can cause your smartphone to malfunction.

Reinstalling the desktop software

If you have problems synchronizing using your desktop sync software, you may need to reinstall the software.

BEFORE YOU BEGIN Make sure your computer profile includes administrator rights to install software. In large organizations, these are usually granted by the system administrator.

- Shut down your computer and turn it on again.
- 2 On your computer, click **Start > Control Panel > Add or Remove Programs**.
- 3 Remove your desktop software. For computers running Windows XP, the software is called Microsoft ActiveSync. For computers running Windows Vista, the software is called Windows Mobile Device Center.
- 4 Quit any active applications, including virus scanners and Internet security applications.



5 To reinstall the software, insert the Windows Mobile Getting Started CD into your computer's CD drive, and follow the onscreen instructions. See Installing ActiveSync desktop software: Windows XP or Installing Windows Mobile Device Center: Windows Vista for detailed instructions

You must install the desktop sync software that came with your smartphone on the Windows Mobile Getting Started CD. Other versions do not work with this smartphone.

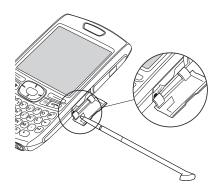
DID YOU KNOW? The Windows Mobile Getting Started CD installs the software and drivers that let you synchronize with Microsoft Office Outlook®. If you want to synchronize with a different personal information manager (PIM), you must install a third-party solution. Contact the PIM's vendor to learn if software is available for your smartphone.

Resetting your smartphone

Performing a soft reset

Performing a soft reset is similar to restarting a computer. If your smartphone is not responding or you have trouble synchronizing with your computer, a soft reset may help.

- 1 If your smartphone responds to key presses, press and hold **Power/End**to turn off your phone.
- 2 If the screen display is on, press
 Power/End to turn off the screen.
- **3** Open the expansion card slot door on the side of your smartphone.
- 4 Use the stylus tip to gently press the reset button next to the expansion card slot.



- 5 Wait for the progress bar on the Treo logo screen to fill before continuing to use your smartphone.
 - You can also do a soft reset by removing the battery and reinserting it.
 - DID YOU KNOW? If the phone or the Bluetooth® wireless technology feature was on before a reset, these automatically turn on after the reset.

Performing a hard reset

A hard reset erases all personal information, such as appointments, contacts, and tasks, as well as programs

you have added, such as third-party software on your smartphone. Never do a hard reset without first trying a soft reset. You can restore previously synchronized information the next time you sync.

IMPORTANT Synchronize to restore your Outlook data, such as Outlook email, Calendar, Contacts, Notes, and Tasks. You can use a backup and restore solution. Make sure it's an application that's approved by Palm, such as the one included on the Windows Mobile Getting Started CD.

- TIP Some third-party applications do not create a backup on your computer when you synchronize. If you do a hard reset, you may lose info in these applications and you need to reinstall the application on your smartphone after the hard reset. Please contact the application vendor to find out if your info is backed up during synchronization.
- DID YOU KNOW? When you synchronize after a hard reset, the source folder in My Documents changes from Treo My Documents to WM_your name.



A hard reset can tell you whether a problem stems from your smartphone or from an application installed on it. If you do not experience the problem after you perform a hard reset, the problem may be related to software you installed. See Third-party applications for suggestions on diagnosing third-party software issues.

- 1 Synchronize your smartphone with your computer so that your smartphone applications and info can be restored by synchronizing again after you perform the hard rest.
- **2** Open the expansion card slot door on the side of your smartphone.
- **3** If the screen is off, press **Power/End** to wake up the screen.
- 4 While pressing and holding **Power/End**, use the tip of the stylus to gently press and hold the reset button next to the expansion card slot.
- 5 Continue pressing and holding both buttons until the "Erase all data?" prompt appears.
- 6 Press Up ▲ to confirm the hard reset.

- 7 Wait for the progress bar on the Treo logo screen to fill before continuing to use your smartphone.
- 8 (Optional) Synchronize to restore your previously synchronized info. If you use a backup utility, you may also need to restore a backup to recover additional info and settings.

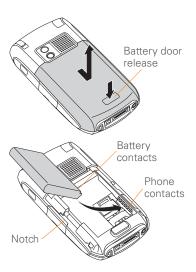
Replacing the battery

Your smartphone comes with a replaceable battery. Be sure to use a replacement battery from Palm that is compatible with Treo 800w models. Do not use a battery from any earlier model of smartphone.

The Be sure to dispose of your old battery in an environmentally responsible and legal way. In some areas, disposal in household or business trash is prohibited. Visit www.palm.com/environment for more information.

DID YOU KNOW? Your smartphone stores all your info even when you remove the battery.

- 1 Press **Power/End** to turn off the screen
- 2 Use one hand to press the Battery door release and use the other hand to slide the battery door downward to remove it from your smartphone.
- 3 Place a finger in the notch between the stylus and the battery, and lift the battery at a 45-degree angle.
- 4 Align the new battery's contacts with the phone contacts inside the battery compartment.
- 5 Insert the new battery into the compartment at a 45-degree angle, pressing it into place. Slide the battery door onto the back of the smartphone until it clicks into place.



6 Wait for the screen to turn on.



Performance

The applications are running slower than usual

- 1 Press Start and select Settings.
- 3 Select Running Programs.
- 4 Select Stop All to close all your open applications.
- 5 Press OK (18).

If the previous steps don't fix the problem, try doing a soft reset (see <u>Performing a soft reset</u>). If the problem persists, follow these steps to turn off the Voice Command setting, if it is enabled:

- 1 Press Start and select Settings.
- 2 Select Personal, and then select Voice Command ?.
- 3 Uncheck the Enabled box.
- 4 Press OK .

THE Be sure that third-party applications are designed for Windows Mobile 6 Professional. Applications written for Windows Mobile 6 Standard or earlier versions of Windows Mobile software do not work with your smartphone.

If you can try a free version of the software before purchasing it, you can test it first to make sure it works properly.

My battery seems to drain quickly

If you have a push email solution (such as GoodLinkTM wireless messaging) or if you have set up a schedule for wireless synchronization, check with your email provider or system administrator to make sure that the server is set up properly to work with your smartphone. Incorrect server setup can cause excessive drain on your battery.

For more tips on conversing battery life, see Maximizing battery life).



The screen appears blank

- 1 If you're on a call, when the time period specified in Backlight Settings expires, the screen dims; one minute later, the screen automatically turns off.

 Press any key except Power/End to wake up the screen. Pressing Power/End hangs up the call.
- 2 Look closely at the screen. If you can see a dim image, try adjusting the screen brightness (see <u>Adjusting the</u> <u>brightness</u>).
- 3 If that doesn't work, perform a soft reset (see <u>Performing a soft reset</u>).
- 4 If that doesn't work, connect your smartphone to the AC charger (see <u>Charging the battery</u>) and perform a soft reset again.
- **5** If that doesn't work, perform a hard reset (see <u>Performing a hard reset</u>).

TIP If you are using a third-party application, make sure that the application supports 240x240 screen resolution.

The screen doesn't respond accurately to taps or activates wrong features

- 1 Make sure there is no debris trapped under the edges of the screen.
- 2 Press Start and select Settings.
- 3 Select the **System** tab, and then select **Screen** 3.
- 4 On the General tab, select **Align Screen**.
- 5 Tap the screen where indicated.
- 6 Press OK (19).

Network connection

Signal strength is weak

- 1 If you're standing, move about 3 meters (10 feet) in any direction.
- **2** If you're in a building, move near a window. Open any metal blinds.
- **3** If you're in a building, move outdoors or to a more open area.
- **4** If you're outdoors, move away from large buildings, trees, or electrical wires.



- 5 If you're in a vehicle, move your smartphone so that it's level with a window.
 - TIP Become familiar with low coverage areas where you live, commute, work, and play so you know when to expect signal strength issues.

My smartphone won't connect to the mobile network

- **1** Try the suggestions above for weak signals.
- 2 Turn off your phone and turn it on again (see <u>Turning your Palm® Treo™ 800w</u> smartphone on/off).

3 Perform a soft reset (see <u>Performing a</u> soft reset).

My phone seems to turn off by itself

If a system error and reset occur, the phone automatically turns on if it was on before the reset. However, if your smartphone can't determine if your phone was on before the reset, it does not automatically turn on the phone (see Turning your phone on).

I can't tell if data services are available

The following icons appear in the title bar to indicate whether data services are available:

Your phone is connected to a 3G CDMA2000 (3G or HSDPA) network, but you are not actively transmitting data. You can still make or receive calls

Your phone is on and a 3G ıņ, CDMA2000 data connection is active. You can make and receive. calls and transmit data simultaneously.

 $\overline{\mathsf{H}}$

Your phone is connected to a HSDPA CDMA2000 network, but you are not actively transmitting data. You can still make or receive calls

멸.

G

О.

NOTE In most cases, when your phone is connected to a CDMA2000 network (either 3G or HSDPA) but you are not actively transmitting data, the 3G icon appears. The H icon may appear when your phone is connected to a HSDPA CDMA2000 network, but you are not actively transmitting data

Your phone is on and an HSDPA ij, CDMA2000 data connection is active. You can make and receive calls and transmit data simultaneously.

> Your phone is connected to an EDGE network, but you are not actively transmitting data. You can still make or receive calls

Your phone is on and an EDGE if data connection is active. You can still make or receive calls but the data transmission is automatically interrupted.

Your phone is connected to a GPRS network, but you are not actively transmitting data. You can still make or receive calls

Your phone is on and a GPRS data connection is active. You can still make or receive calls. but the data transmission is automatically interrupted.



My smartphone won't connect to the Internet

Your smartphone supports GPRS or CDMA2000 (3G or HSDPA) wireless data networks. To connect to the Internet, you must subscribe to data services with your wireless service provider.

- Contact your wireless service provider to verify that your subscription plan includes data services and that these services have been correctly activated. Your wireless service provider should also be able to tell you if there are any outages in your location.
- Press and hold Power/End to turn off your phone, then press and hold the same button to turn it back on.
- Perform a soft reset (see <u>Performing a</u> soft reset).
- Confirm that data services are correctly configured on your smartphone by doing the following:
- 1 Press Start and select Settings.
- 2 Select the **Connections** tab, and then select **Connections**

- 3 On the Tasks tab, select Manage existing connections.
- 4 If your wireless service provider's name appears in the list, press **OK** (a). If not, contact your wireless service provider for assistance

I can't send or receive text or multimedia messages

- Make sure your phone is on and that you're inside a coverage area (see Turning your phone on).
- Contact your wireless service provider to verify that your plan includes messaging services, that these services have been correctly activated, and that they are available at your location. Your wireless service provider should be able to tell you if messaging services have been experiencing transmission delays.
- If possible, contact the recipient or sender of the message, and make sure the receiving device can handle the type of message you're sending.
- If a text message arrives but does not display a notification, perform a soft reset (see <u>Performing a soft reset</u>).

I can't make or receive calls using a hands-free device with Bluetooth® wireless technology

Verify all of the following:

- The Turn on Bluetooth box is checked in Bluetooth Settings.
- · Your Bluetooth device is charged and turned on
- · Your smartphone is within range of the hands-free device. Bluetooth range is up to 10 meters (30 feet) in optimum environmental conditions, which include the absence of the following: obstacles. radio interference from nearby electronic equipment, and other factors.
- The Bluetooth Settings screen is closed.
- You are away from other devices using the 2.4 GHz radio frequency, such as cordless phones, microwaves, and Wi-Fi equipment. If this is impossible, move the phone closer to the hands-free device
- · The device specifications are compatible with your smartphone.

I lost the connection between my smartphone and my Bluetooth headset

- Press **Start** and select **Settings**.
- Select the **Connections** tab. and then select Bluetooth
- Select the **Devices** tab
- Select your headset name from the list.
- 5 In Partnership Settings, make sure the Hands Free option box is checked.
- Select Save.
- Highlight the headset name.
- Press and hold **Center** to open the shortcut menu, and then select Set as Hands-Free
- 9 Test your headset by making or receiving a call.

If the headset still doesn't work, delete the existing partnership and create a new one. To delete the partnership:

- 1 Press Start and select Settings.
- Select the **Connections** tab, and then select Bluetooth
- 3 Highlight the headset device name.
- 4 Press and hold **Center** to open the shortcut menu, and then select Delete.



5 Create a new partnership (see Connecting to devices with Bluetooth® wireless technology.

Synchronization

Synchronization enables you to back up the information on your smartphone onto your computer or your server. If you ever need to perform a hard reset or otherwise erase all your information on your smartphone, you can synchronize your smartphone with your computer to restore the info. To make sure you always have an up-to-date backup of your info, synchronize frequently.

You can synchronize email and other information directly with Microsoft Exchange Server 2003 with Service Pack 2 or Exchange Server 2007 using Microsoft Exchange ActiveSync®, or you can synchronize your smartphone with your computer, using the desktop sync software from the Windows Mobile Getting Started CD that came with your smartphone.

DID YOU KNOW? You can go to the Windows Mobile website for more information at www.windowsmobile.com.

PID YOU KNOW? A common cause of sync problems is the presence of protective software, such as VPNs or firewalls, on your computer or network.

Desktop sync software

This section covers issues with synchronizing using the desktop sync software that came with your smartphone. If you have a Windows XP computer, the desktop sync software is called ActiveSync® desktop software. If you have a Windows Vista computer, the desktop sync software is called Windows Mobile Device Center.

NOTE See Exchange ActiveSync (wireless synchronization) for help with direct wireless synchronization with an Exchange server.

The desktop sync software does not respond to sync attempt

As you complete the following steps, synchronize after each step. If the

synchronization is successful, you do not need to complete the remaining steps.

- Verify that the USB sync cable is securely connected at all points (see <u>Setting up your computer for</u> synchronization).
- 2 Make sure that all of the files you're trying to sync are closed on both your computer and your smartphone.
- 3 On a Windows XP computer, look for the ActiveSync ♠ icon at the top of your smartphone screen and the ActiveSync ⑤ icon in the taskbar on your computer to make sure ActiveSync desktop software is running on your computer. On a Windows Vista computer, look for the connection icon at the top of your smartphone screen

If the correct icons are not displayed, do the following:

Smartphone: Press Start (2), select Programs. and select ActiveSync (3). Press Menu (right action key) and select Connections. Make sure the Synchronize all PCs using this

connection box is checked, and that **USB** is selected from the list.

Windows XP computer: Click Start, navigate to Programs, and then select Microsoft ActiveSync.

Windows Vista computer: Click Start, select All Programs, and then select Windows Mobile Device Center.

- 4 Do one of the following:
- Windows XP computer: Double-click the ActiveSync icon in your taskbar. From the File menu, select Connection Settings. Make sure the Allow USB connections box is checked, and then click Connect.
- 6 Windows Vista computer: Click Start, select All Programs, and then select Windows Mobile Device Center.
 Select Connect without setting up your device, and then select Connection settings. Make sure the Allow USB connections box is checked, and click Connect.
- 7 Perform a soft reset (see <u>Performing a soft reset</u>).

- 14
- 8 Restart your computer and make sure the desktop sync software is running.
- 9 If problems persist and you're synchronizing through a USB hub, try connecting the sync cable to a different USB port or directly to your computer's built-in USB port.
- 10 If you're already synchronizing through a built-in USB port on the front of your computer, move the sync cable to a USB on the back of your computer if your computer has USB ports in both places.
- 11 Uninstall the desktop software that came with your smartphone, and then insert the Windows Mobile Getting Started CD, which came with your smartphone, and repeat the installation process (see <u>Reinstalling the desktop</u> <u>software</u>).
- 12 For a Windows XP computer only, delete the existing partnership between your smartphone and your computer and create a new one by doing the following steps in turn:
 - Disconnect your smartphone and your computer from the sync cable.

- Right-click the gray ActiveSync (S)
 icon in the taskbar in the lower-right
 corner of your computer screen, and
 then select Open Microsoft
 ActiveSync.
- Click File, and then click Delete Mobile Device. When asked to confirm, click Yes.
- Connect your smartphone and your computer to the sync cable.
- When the Synchronization Setup Wizard appears, follow the steps to establish a sync relationship between your smartphone and your computer.
- 13 If your organization uses a firewall or a VPN connection, synchronizing with ActiveSync may not work. For a Windows XP computer only, go to www.microsoft.com and search for the following topics to help with specific firewall setup situations:
 - ActiveSync USB Connection Troubleshooting Guide
 - ActiveSync with Sygate Personal Firewall
 - ActiveSync with TrendMicro PC-cillin Internet Security

- ActiveSync with Norton Personal Firewall
- ActiveSync with Zone Alarm Security Suite
- ActiveSync with McAfee Personal Firewall
- ActiveSync with Windows Firewall
- 14 Verify with your computer hardware vendor that your operating system supports your internal USB controller.

Synchronization finishes but info doesn't appear where it should

With the included desktop sync software, your smartphone can synchronize with the root folders of Microsoft Office Outlook Contacts, Calendar, Tasks, and Notes (Outlook sold separately; a free trial version is available for download from the Windows Mobile Getting Started CD). If you want to synchronize with a global Exchange Address Book, you must copy the addresses to your local Contacts list in Microsoft Office Outlook (right-click the addresses and select Add to Personal Address Book).

- Microsoft Office Outlook subfolders and public folders are not accessible with the included software. You may want to use a third-party solution instead.
- If you're trying to sync offline, be sure to set your Microsoft Office Outlook Calendar, Contacts, Notes, and Tasks to be available offline
- If you're still having problems, try the following:
- 1 Make sure you're synchronizing with the intended desktop personal information manager (PIM). The Windows Mobile Getting Started CD lets you synchronize with Microsoft Office Outlook for Windows. If you use a different PIM, you need to install third-party software to synchronize. For more information, consult the company that makes the PIM
- 2 Open the desktop sync software on your computer, and make sure the Files synchronization option is selected (see <u>Changing which applications sync</u>).
- 3 Uninstall the desktop sync software, reboot your computer, insert the Windows Mobile Getting Started CD, which came with your smartphone, and



then repeat the installation process (see Reinstalling the desktop software).

Synchronization starts but doesn't finish

Make sure that you installed the desktop software that came with your smartphone. If you're not sure whether this software is installed, reinstall it (see <u>Reinstalling the</u> desktop software).

My video and music files won't sync

- Make sure you have Windows Media Player 10 or later installed on your computer.
- 2 Reinstall the desktop sync software from the Windows Mobile Getting Started CD, which came with your smartphone (see Reinstalling the desktop software). Media file synchronization fails if you installed the desktop sync software before you installed Windows Media Player.

My appointments show up in the wrong time slot after I sync

1 Make sure that you installed the desktop sync software that came with your smartphone. If you're not sure

- whether this software is installed, reinstall it (see <u>Reinstalling the desktop</u> software).
- 2 Open Microsoft Office Outlook and correct the wrong entries.
- **3** Manually enter any information you added to your smartphone since the last time you synchronized.
- **4** Synchronize your phone and your computer.

My scheduled sync doesn't work

By default, a scheduled sync does not work while you are roaming. This is to prevent roaming charges on your account. If roaming charges are not a concern, follow these steps to continue your sync schedule while roaming:

- 1 Press Start and select Programs.
- 2 Select ActiveSync 🔕.
- 3 Press Menu (right action key) and select **Schedule**.
- 4 Check the Use above setting when roaming box.
- 5 Press OK 📵.

An alert tells me that ActiveSync encountered a problem on the server

There is a temporary problem with the server or the server may be temporarily overloaded. Try again later, and if the problem persists, contact your system administrator

An alert tells me that there is not enough free memory to sync my info

The ActiveSync application on your smartphone ran out of storage space. Try the following:

- Go to Memory Settings and close all running programs (see <u>Closing</u> <u>applications</u>).
- 2 If the problem persists, see Making room on your smartphone for suggestions on other ways to free up space on your smartphone.

An alert tells me that ActiveSync encountered a problem with [item type] [item name]

An error occurred during the sync of a single item. This error can usually be corrected only by removing the item that

caused the error. If you sync again to see if the error persists, be aware that items causing this type of error are skipped and do not show up again.

My Today screen settings are not restored after a hard reset

Settings such as the background image and plug-in choices are not backed up during synchronization, so they can't be restored after a hard reset. If you use a backup utility, you may be able to restore a backup to recover your Today screen setting and other additional info.

Exchange ActiveSync (wireless synchronization)

This section covers issues with direct wireless synchronization with an Exchange server. See <u>Desktop sync software</u> for help with synchronizing using your desktop sync software.

TIP If you are synchronizing with an Exchange server and you're unable to change your lock settings, check with your system administrator to find out if a systemwide locking policy is in place.



An alert tells me that the server could not be reached

Your smartphone had to wait too long to connect to the Exchange server. The connection may have been lost, the server may be temporarily overloaded, or the server may have encountered an internal error. Check your Exchange server name and proxy server settings (see Setting up wireless synchronization), and try again later.

An alert tells me that my account information could not be detected

When you set up the Exchange server sync options, the credentials page was left blank. Correct the credentials (see <u>Setting up wireless synchronization</u>), or set up your smartphone to sync only with a computer, and try to sync again.

An alert tells me the device timed out while waiting for credentials

The Exchange server credentials screen was left open too long. Re-enter the Exchange server credentials, and try to sync again.

Email

I have problems using my account

Occasionally you may experience problems using an email account after you set it up. If you followed the account setup procedure and are experiencing problems in using the account, verify that the account complies with your email provider's requirements by following these steps:

- Verify both your password and your username for your email account.
- Some email service providers require you to be on their network to use your email account. If this is the case, be sure to use your provider's network as the connection type for the account.
- Some email service providers have other requirements specific to their service. For example, Yahoo! requires you to set up POP mail forwarding for your Yahoo! account to download email messages to your smartphone. Check with your service provider to see if any provider-specific requirements exist.

 Service provider settings frequently change. If your email account was working but you are currently experiencing problems, check with your service provider to see if any of the account settings have changed.

I have problems sending and receiving email

Short periods of time when email is unavailable are common due to server problems or poor wireless coverage. If you have problems sending or receiving mail for an extended period of time, check with your ISP or email service provider to verify that the service is working properly.

Scheduled email synchronization is not working

If email synchronization is occurring and you turn your smartphone off or the connection to your email service provider is disconnected, the synchronization fails.

 Check the synchronization schedule to make sure that email sync is set to occur at the expected day and time. See <u>Setting the synchronization schedule</u> for details. Press Start , select Programs, and then select ActiveSync . Press Menu (right action key) and select Configure Server. Make sure the verify password setting is on. This is required for over-the-air synchronization.

I have problems sending email

If you are able to receive email messages but cannot send them, try the following steps, in turn:

- Make sure your ISP or email provider allows you to access email on a smartphone. Some providers do not offer this option at all; other providers require an upgrade for accessing email on a smartphone.
- Press Start (a), select Programs, and then select ActiveSync (a). Press Menu (right action key) and select Configure Server. Make sure the SSL box is checked.
- Enter the name of a different outgoing mail server for sending mail. Many ISPs, such as cable companies, require that you have an Internet connection to their network to send email through their servers. In this case, you can almost

always receive email from these accounts, but if you want to send email, you must send it through another server (see <u>Setting up a POP/IMAP account in the Inbox application: Common email providers</u>).

My vCard or vCal email attachment isn't forwarding correctly

Microsoft Office Outlook provides several features including vCard and vCal that work with email client software on a Windows computer. For these features to work correctly, the email client software must be properly set up. Follow these steps to check the settings:

- Click Start on your computer, and then select Settings.
- 2 Select Control Panel.
- 3 Select Internet Options, and then click the Programs tab.
- **4** Make sure that the email field is set to the correct email client software.
- 5 Click OK.
- 6 Start the email client software and make sure it is configured as the default MAPI client. Consult the documentation

for your desktop email application for more information

When I sync with my Exchange server my info is not downloading to my smartphone

Check with your system administrator to obtain the name of the mail server that offers you wireless access to the corporate mail system. If you cannot obtain the name of this server (some companies do not give it out, because they do not want wireless access to their servers), you cannot use Exchange ActiveSync to synchronize with the Exchange server. You can also check the following setting:

- 1 Press **Start** and select **Programs**.
- 2 Select ActiveSync .
- **3** Press **Menu** (right action key) and select **Configure Server**.
- 4 Make sure the SSL box is checked.

Web

I can't access a web page

First, make sure you have Internet access: Open Internet Explorer Mobile and try to view a web page you've loaded before. To ensure that you're viewing the page directly from the Internet, press Menu (right action key) and select Refresh. After confirming your Internet connection, try to view the page in question again. If it comes up blank, press Menu (right action key) and select Refresh.

If you're still having trouble, the page may contain elements that are not supported by Internet Explorer Mobile, such as Flash, Shockwave, VBScript, WML script, and other plug-ins.

Some websites use a redirector to their true home page. For example, if you enter the address http://www.palm.com/support, it may resolve to http://www.palm.com/support, it may resolve to http://www.palm.com/support, it may resolve to <a href="http://www.palm.com/support, follow the redirect, try using a desktop browser to see the landing page of the redirector, and enter that address in Internet Explorer Mobile.

TIP Your smartphone can open your email application when you select an email address on a web page. If nothing happens when you select the link, try setting up your email application first.

An image or map is too small on my smartphone screen

Internet Explorer Mobile has several viewing modes: One Column, Default, Desktop, and Full Screen. Switch to Desktop to see the full-size image (see <u>Viewing a web page</u>).

A secure site refuses to permit a transaction

Some websites don't support certain browsers for transactions. Please contact the site's webmaster to make sure the site allows transactions using Internet Explorer Mobile.

Camera

PID YOU KNOW? Pictures are 16-bit color.

Resolution settings range from the low end of VGA (160 x 120 pixels) to a high end of 1.3 megapixels (1280 x 1024). Video resolution settings range from a low end of 176 x 144 pixels to a high end of 352 x 288 pixels. You can change the resolution setting by pressing Menu (right action key) and selecting

Resolution (still images) or Quality (video).

Here are some tips for taking good pictures with the built-in camera:

- Clean the camera's lens with a soft, lint-free cloth
- Take pictures in bright lighting conditions. Low-light images may be grainy, due to the sensitivity of the camera.
- Hold the camera as still as possible. Try supporting your picture-taking arm against your body or a stationary object (such as a wall).
- Keep the subject of the pictures still.
 Exposure time is longer with lower light levels, so you may see a blur.

- For best results, verify that you have the brightest light source coming from behind you, lighting the subject's face. Avoid taking indoor pictures with the subject in front of a window or light.
- Make sure the subject is at least 0.5 meters (18 inches) away from the camera to ensure good focus.

Remember that when you synchronize, your Camera images are stored in the C:\Documents and Settings\<Username>\My Documents\Treo My Documents folder on your hard drive (see Camera).

The Camera preview image looks strange

Some third-party applications overwrite the color settings on your smartphone with their own 8-bit color settings. This can affect the Camera Preview Mode. Delete third-party applications one by one until the preview image improves (see <u>Removing applications</u>).

Third-party applications

Sometimes third-party applications can cause conflicts on your smartphone. Third-party applications that modify wireless features may affect the performance of your smartphone and may require extra troubleshooting. Use caution when installing the following types of applications:

- · Ringtone managers
- Caller ID applications
- · Instant messaging
- Applications that modify when your phone or data connections turn on or off and how your phone behaves

If you recently installed an application and your smartphone seems to be stuck, try the following:

- 1 Perform a soft reset (see <u>Performing a soft reset</u>).
- 2 Make sure the third-party application is compatible with the Windows Mobile 6

- Professional operating system on your smartphone.
- 3 Delete the most recently installed application from your smartphone (see Removing applications).
- 4 If the problem persists, perform another soft reset
- **5** If possible, synchronize or use a backup utility to back up your most recent info.
- **6** Perform a hard reset (see <u>Performing a hard reset</u>).
- 7 Synchronize or restore your backup to restore the info in your built-in applications.
- 8 If the problem is resolved, begin reinstalling your third-party applications one at a time.
- 9 If the problem recurs, delete the last application you installed and report the problem to its developer.

Getting more help

Contact the vendor of any third-party software if you require further assistance.



TIP Remember that not all third-party applications were written with the Treo 800w smartphone keyboard and 5-way navigator in mind. You may encounter strange behavior or errors in these applications if you use the keyboard and the 5-way navigator.

Making room on your smartphone

If you store a large amount of information, or install many third-party applications, the internal memory on your smartphone may fill up. Here are some common ways to clear space on your smartphone:

- Camera: Large images or videos take up a lot of memory. Move images to an expansion card or delete images from your smartphone (see <u>Pictures &</u> Videos)
- Messaging: Multimedia content and email attachments can consume excessive memory. Move multimedia content and attachments to an expansion card, or delete large files

- from your smartphone (see <u>Deleting</u> messages and <u>Deleting a single</u> message). You may also want to empty the deleted items folder.
- Internet: If you save links to pages you've visited in Internet Explorer Mobile, you may want to clear all recent pages (see <u>Customizing your Internet</u> Explorer Mobile settings).
- Third-party applications: You can delete infrequently used applications or move them to an expansion card (see Copying or moving applications and files between your smartphone and an expansion card).

Also, remember that your smartphone includes an expansion card slot, and that you can store applications and information on expansion cards. However, you still need free memory on the smartphone itself to run applications from an expansion card.

Voice quality

Is the other person hearing an echo?

- Try decreasing the volume on your smartphone to avoid coupling or feedback on the other person's end.
 This applies to both the speakerphone and to the handset earpiece.
- Position the smartphone closer to your ear to prevent sound leaking back to the microphone. Keep your hand away from the microphone hole, which is on the lower-right side of your smartphone.
- If you're using Speakerphone mode with your smartphone lying on a flat

surface, try turning the smartphone "face down" (screen facing the surface)

Are you hearing your own voice echo?

Ask the other person to turn down their volume or to hold the phone closer to their ear.

Is your voice too quiet on the other end?

Be sure to hold the bottom of the smartphone, or the hands-free microphone, close to your mouth.

Check the signal strength indicator. If the signal is weak, try to find an area with better coverage.

Where to learn more

For a quick introduction

While using your smartphone

 On-device Help: Your smartphone includes on-device help that is specially formatted for your smartphone screen.
 To view the on-device help, press Start and select Help. Online support from Palm: For up-to-date downloads, troubleshooting, and support information, go to www.palm.com/treo800w-support.

If you need more information

- Books: Many books on Windows
 Mobile® devices are available in local or
 online book retailers (look in the
 computers section).
- Customer service from your wireless service provider: For questions about your mobile account or features, contact your wireless service provider's customer care

Terms

ActiveSync®

The software on your smartphone that exchanges and updates the information on your Palm® Treo™ 800w smartphone with the information on your computer.

ActiveSync desktop software

The software on your Windows XP computer that exchanges and updates the information on your computer with the information on your smartphone. To open ActiveSync on your computer, double-click the ActiveSync icon in the taskbar in the lower-right corner of your screen. If the icon does not appear, click **Start**, click **All Programs** (or navigate to the **Programs** group), and then select **Microsoft ActiveSync**. See <u>Installing ActiveSync</u> desktop software: Windows XP.

Alt (alternative) (Alt

The key that you use to enter accented characters and symbols that do not appear on your keyboard. Press Alt (At), and then press a key on the keyboard to view the alternative characters available for that key.

See Entering other symbols and accented characters.

auto-off interval

The time of inactivity that passes before the screen on your smartphone turns off. The wireless features on your smartphone are unaffected by this setting. See Optimizing power settings.

beam

The process of sending or receiving an entry or application using the infrared port on your smartphone or using Bluetooth® wireless technology. See <u>Beaming</u> information.

Bluetooth® wireless technology

Technology that enables devices such as smartphones, mobile phones, and computers to connect wirelessly to each other so that they can exchange information over short distances. For more info, visit www.bluetooth.com. See Connecting to devices with Bluetooth wireless technology.

desktop software

A Personal Information Manager (PIM) application for computers, such as

Microsoft Outlook®, that helps you manage your personal information and keep it synchronized with your smartphone. See Installing ActiveSync desktop software: Windows XP.

dialog box

A set of options and command buttons that is enclosed by a border and that enables you to carry out a specific task.

infrared (IR)

A way of transmitting information using light waves. You use the IR port on your smartphone to transfer information between other IR devices within a short radius. See <u>Beaming information</u>.

Lithium-ion (Li-ion)

The rechargeable battery technology used in your smartphone. See <u>Charging the battery</u>.

Microsoft Exchange ActiveSync®

Technology that allows your smartphone to synchronize email, contacts, calendar events, and tasks wirelessly with Microsoft Exchange Server 2003 or 2007. See <u>Setting</u> up wireless synchronization.

MMS (Multimedia Messaging System)

An enhanced messaging system that enables you to send pictures, animations, and ringtones almost instantly. See Creating and sending a multimedia message.

Mobile Device

The component on your Windows XP computer that enables you to install applications and other information on your smartphone. To access it, open Windows Explorer or My Computer and look for the icon that represents your smartphone. See Installing applications from your computer.

Option

Press this key and then a second key to enter the character or to access the feature displayed above the letter on the second key. See Entering numbers, punctuation, and symbols.

partnership

The connection that you make between two devices by means of Bluetooth wireless technology. The devices recognize each other because each device finds the same passkey on the other device. After you create a partnership between the devices, you no longer need to enter the passkey. Partnership is also known as paired relationship, pairing, trusted device, and trusted pair on some devices. See Connecting to devices with Bluetooth®_wireless technology.

Phone Off

Appearing on the Today screen, this indicates that your smartphone is not connected to any network, and you cannot make calls except those to emergency numbers. You can still use the organizer features, however. To turn the phone on/off, go to the Wireless Manager. See Turning your phone on.

Phone/Send

The button on your smartphone that provides quick access to your Today screen and dials after you've entered a phone number. See <u>Making calls from the Today screen</u>.

piconet

An ad-hoc network of devices that uses Bluetooth wireless technology to connect one master device with up to seven active slave devices. The network can include up to 255 inactive, or parked, slave devices which the master device can bring into active status at any time.

PIM (personal information manager)

A genre of software that includes applications such as Microsoft Outlook, Palm® Desktop software, Lotus Notes, and ACT!. PIMs generally store contacts, schedules, tasks, and memos.

PIN (personal identification number)

The password assigned to your SIM card by your wireless service provider. Turning on the PIN lock secures your wireless account. See also PUK. See <u>Locking the SIM card</u>.

PIN2 (personal identification number 2)

A code that protects certain network settings such as fixed dialing.

PUK (PIN unlock key)

A special extended password assigned to your SIM card. If you enter the wrong PIN more than the allowed number of times, your SIM is blocked and you must call your wireless service provider for the PUK. See Locking the SIM card.

Secure Sockets Layer (SSL)

A security protocol that enables you to send personal information in a more secure manner over the Internet.

SIM (Subscriber Identity Module) card

The smartcard, inserted into your smartphone, that contains your mobile account information, such as your phone number and the services to which you subscribe. You can also store addresses, phone numbers, and SMS messages on the SIM card. See <u>Inserting the SIM card</u> and battery.

SMS (Short Messaging Service)

The service that exchanges short text messages almost instantly between mobile devices. Your smartphone can send and receive text messages while you are on a call. See <u>Creating and sending a text message</u>.

Start 🗷

The menu on your smartphone from which you can open all applications. See <u>Opening applications</u>.

streaming

Technology that enables you to access media content—for example, watch video or listen to an audio program—directly from the Internet on your smartphone without needing to download and a save a

file on your smartphone. See <u>Viewing a</u> video.

synchronization

The process in which information that is entered or updated on your smartphone, your computer, or a server is automatically updated in one of the other locations either wirelessly or by means of a cable connection. See Synchronizing information.

UMTS (Universal Mobile Telecommunications System)

One of the third-generation (3G) mobile phone technologies that is designed for high-speed data transfer, with rates up to 384 Kbps, as well as voice and multimedia services. It uses W-CDMA as the underlying technology. See What are all those icons?

username

The name associated with your smartphone that distinguishes it from other Windows Mobile® devices. If you install ActiveSync® desktop software, you are asked to give your smartphone a username. If you only synchronize wirelessly using Microsoft Exchange ActiveSync, you do not need to give your

smartphone a username. See <u>Installing</u> <u>ActiveSync desktop software: Windows XP.</u>

Windows Mobile

The operating system of your Treo 800w smartphone. Your smartphone uses Windows Mobile® 6 Professional edition. When installing third-party applications to your smartphone, be sure to install only apps that are written for Microsoft Windows Mobile 6 Professional. Apps designed for Microsoft Windows Mobile 6 Standard or any edition of Windows Mobile 5.0 software are not compatible with your Treo 800w smartphone. See Installing third-party applications.

Windows Mobile Device Center

The software on your Windows Vista computer that enables you to synchronize content and manage music, pictures, and videos between your smartphone and your computer. To open Windows Mobile Device Center on your computer, click Start, click All Programs, and select Windows Mobile Device Center. See Installing Windows Mobile Device Center: Windows Vista.

Important Safety Information

FCC Notice

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- · Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- · Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
- Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- · Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by Palm could void the user's authority to operate this equipment.

The following statement is normally required to be on the FCCID label. If the device is too small, the statement must be included in the user manual.

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

- · This device may not cause harmful interference, and
- This device must accept any interferences received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

This guide contains important operational and safety information to help you safely use your Palm* Treo* 800w. Failure to read and follow the information provided in this guide may result in serious bodfily injury. death, or property damage.

General Precautions

There are several simple guidelines to operating your smartphone properly and maintaining safe, satisfactory service.

- Speak directly into the microphone.
- Avoid exposing your smartphone and accessories to rain or liquid spills. If your smartphone does get wet, immediately turn the power off and remove the battery.
- Although your smartphone is quite sturdy, it is a complex piece of equipment and can be broken. Avoid dropping, hitting, or bending it, or sitting on it.
- Any changes or modifications to your smartphone not expressly approved in this document could void your warranty for this equipment and void your authority to operate this equipment.

Maintaining Safe Use of and Access to Your Smartphone

Do Not Rely on Your Smartphone's Phone for Emergency Calls

Wireless phones such as the one on your Treo 800w operate using radio signals, which cannot guarantee connection in all conditions. Therefore you should never rely solely upon any wireless phone for essential communication (for example, medical emergencies). Emergency calls may not be possible on all cellular networks or when certain network services and/or phone features are in use. Check with your local service provider for details.

Using Your Phone While Driving

Talking on your phone while driving (or operating the phone without a hands-free device) is prohibited in some jurisdictions. Laws vary as to specific restrictions. Remember that safety always comes first.

Following Safety Guidelines

To operate your smartphone safely and efficiently, always follow any special regulations in a given area. Turn your smartphone's phone off in areas where use is forbidden or when it may cause interference or dancer.

Using Your Smartphone's Phone Near Other Electronic Devices

Most modern electronic equipment is shielded from radiofrequency (RF) signals. However, RF signals from wireless phones may affect inadequately shielded electronic equipment.

RF signals may affect improperly installed or inadequately shielded electronic operating systems and/or entertainment systems in motor vehicles. Check with the manufacturer or their representative to determine if these systems are adequately shielded from external RF signals. Also check with the manufacturer regarding any equipment that has been added to your vehicle.

Consult the manufacturer of any personal medical devices, such as pacemakers and hearing aids, to determine if they are adequately shielded from external RF signals.

NOTE Always turn off the phone in health care facilities and request permission before using the phone near medical equipment.

Turning Off Your Phone Before Flying

NOTE Turn off your phone before boarding any aircraft. To prevent possible interference with aircraft systems, the U.S. Federal Aviation Administration (FAA) regulations require you to have permission from a crew member to use your phone while the plane is on the ground. To prevent any risk of interference, FCC regulations prohibit using your phone while the plane is in the air.

Turning Off Your Phone in Dangerous Areas

To avoid interfering with blasting operations, turn your phone off when in a blasting area or in other areas with signs indicating two-way radios should be turned off. Construction crews often use remote-control RF devices to set off explosives.

Turn your phone off when you're in any area that has a potentially explosive atmosphere. Although it's rare, your phone and accessories could generate sparks. Sparks can cause an explosion or fire, resulting in bodily injury or even death. These areas are often, but not always. clearly marked. They include:

- Fueling areas such as gas stations.
- · Below deck on boats.
- Fuel or chemical transfer or storage facilities.
- Areas where the air contains chemicals or particles such as grain, dust, or metal powders.
- Any other area where you would normally be advised to turn off your vehicle's engine.

NOTE Never transport or store flammable gas, flammable liquid, or explosives in the compartment of your vehicle that contains your phone or accessories.

Restricting Children's Access to Your Smartphone

Your Treo 800w is not a toy. Do not allow children to play with it as they could hurt themselves and others, damage the smartphone and/or its phone, or make calls that increase your monthly bill.

Using Your Phone With a Hearing Aid Device

Your Palm® Treo™ 800w smart device by Palm is compliant with the FCC Hearing Aid Compatibility (HAC) requirements. For additional HAC information, including the HAC rating of this product, please refer to www.palm.com/CentroHAC.

Your smartphone has been tested for hearing aid device compatibility. When some wireless phones are used near some hearing devices (hearing aids and cochlear implants), users may detect a buzzing, humming, or whining noise. Some hearing devices are more immune than others to this interference noise, and phones also vary in the amount of interference they generate.

The wireless telephone industry has developed ratings for some of their mobile phones, to assist hearing-device users in finding phones that may be compatible with their hearing devices. Not all phones have been rated. Phones that have been rated have a label on the box. Your Palm Treo 800w phone has an M4 and T4 rating.

These ratings are not guarantees. Results will vary, depending on the level of immunity of your hearing device and the degree of your hearing loss. If your hearing device happens to be vulnerable to interference, you may not be able to use a rated phone successfully. Trying out the phone with your hearing device is the best way to evaluate it for your personal needs.

M-Ratings: Phones rated M3 or M4 meet FCC requirements and are likely to generate less interference with hearing devices than phones that are not labeled. M4 is the better/higher of the two ratings.

T-Ratings: Phones rated T3 or T4 meet FCC requirements and are likely to be more usable with a hearing device's telecoil ("T Switch" or "Telephone Switch") than unrated phones. T4 is the better/higher of the two ratings. (Note that not all hearing devices contain telecoils.)

The more immune your hearing aid device is, the less likely you are to experience interference noise from your wireless phone. Hearing aid devices should have ratings similar to those of phones. Ask your hearing health-care professional for the rating of your hearing aid. Add the rating of your hearing aid and your phone to determine probable usability.

- · Any combined rating equal to or greater than six offers best use.
- Any combined rating equal to five is considered normal use.
- Any combined rating equal to four is considered usable.

Thus, if you pair an M3 hearing aid with an M3 phone, you will have a combined rating of six for "best use." This is synonymous for T ratings.

Palm further suggests that you experiment with multiple phones (even those not labeled M3/T3 or M4/T4) while in the store to find the one that works best with your hearing aid device. If you experience interference or find the quality of service unsatisfactory after purchasing your device, promptly return it to the store within 30 days of purchase. With the Palm 30-day Risk-Free Guarantee, you may return the device within 30 days of purchase for a full refund, and you will only be responsible for charges based on your actual usage.

Getting the Best Hearing Device Experience With Your Smartphone

To further minimize interference:

There is usually less interference on the microphone setting than on the telecoil setting.

Set the phone's screen and keyboard backlight settings to ensure the minimum time interval

Move the phone around to find the point with the least interference.

If your hearing aid is equipped with a telecoil, turn on the HAC setting on your smartphone.

Turning on the HAC Setting

When the HAC setting is on, your smartphone sends the audio from your phone calls to the telecoil rather than to the microphone of your hearing aid. You are likely to hear calls much better because volume is increased and background noise and feedback are diminished. The HAC setting improves only the calls you listen to through the earpiece. Turn off BT. Turn off WIFi. It does not affect calls heard on the speakerphone or with a car kit or headset. HAC requires extra battery power, so watch your battery consumption when it's turned

CAUTION Do not turn on the HAC setting unless you use a hearing aid with a telecoil. Using this setting without a hearing aid or with a hearing aid without a telecoil may be harmful to your hearing.

- 1 Make sure your phone is turned on (see "Turning Your Device's Phone On and Off" on page 55).
- 2 Press Phone .
- 3 Press Menu
- 4 Select Options and then select Phone Preferences.
- 5 Check the Hearing Aid Compatibility box.
- Select OK.

Caring for the Battery

Protecting Your Battery

NOTE The guidelines listed below help you get the most out of your battery's performance.

- Recently there have been some public reports of wireless phone
 batteries overheating, catching fire, or exploding. It appears that
 many, if not all, of these reports involve counterfeit or
 inexpensive, aftermarket-brand batteries with unknown or
 questionable manufacturing standards. Palm is not aware of
 similar problems with Treo 800xs resulting from the proper use
 of batteries and accessories approved by Palm or the
 manufacturer of your phone. Use only Palm or
 manufacturer of your phone. Use only Palm or
 manufacturer of through your smartphone's manufacturer, or call
 1-866-343-1114 to order. They're also available at
 www.Palm.com—click Accessories under the Shop & Browse
 menu. Buying the right batteries and accessories is the best way
 to ensure they're genuine and safe.
- In order to avoid damage, charge the battery only in temperatures that range from 32° F to 113° F 10° C to 45° C).
- Don't use the battery charger in direct sunlight or in high humidity areas, such as the bathroom.
- · Never dispose of the battery by incineration.
- . Keep the metal contacts on top of the battery clean.
- · Don't attempt to disassemble or short-circuit the battery.
- The battery may need recharging if it has not been used for a long period of time.
- It's best to replace the battery when it no longer provides acceptable performance. It can be recharged hundreds of times before it needs replacing.
- Don't store the battery in high temperature areas for long periods of time. It's best to follow these storage rules:
 - Less than one month: -4° F to 140° F (-20° C to 60° C)
 - More than one month: -4° F to 113° F (-20° C to 45° C)

Battery Safety Information

- Do not disassemble or open, crush, bend or deform, puncture or shred
- Do not modify or remanufacture, attempt to insert foreign objects into the battery, immerse or expose to water or other liquids, expose to fire, explosion or other hazard.
- . Only use the battery for the system for which it is specified.
- Only use the battery with a charging system that has been qualified with the system per this standard. Use of an unqualified battery or charger may present a risk of fire, explosion, leakage, or other hazard.
- Do not short circuit a battery or allow metallic conductive objects to contact battery terminals.
- Replace the battery only with another battery that has been qualified with the system per this standard, IEEE-Std-1725-200x.
 Use of an unqualified battery may present a risk of fire, explosion, leakage or other hazard.
- Promptly dispose of used batteries in accordance with local regulations.
- · Battery usage by children should be supervised.
- Avoid dropping the phone or battery. If the phone or battery is dropped, especially on a hard surface, and the user suspects damage, take it to a service center for inspection.
- Improper battery use may result in a fire, explosion or other hazard.

Disposal of Lithium-Ion (Li-Ion) Batteries

Do not handle a damaged or leaking li-ion battery as you can be burned.

For safe disposal options of your li-ion batteries, contact your nearest Palm authorized service center.

Special Note: Be sure to dispose of your battery properly. In some areas, the disposal of batteries in household or business trash may be prohibited.

Radiofrequency (RF) Energy

Understanding How Your Phone Operates

Your phone is basically a radio transmitter and receiver. When it's turned on, it receives and transmits radiofrequency (RF) signals. When you use your phone, the system handling your call controls the power level. This power can range from 0.006 watts to 0.2 watts in digital mode.

Knowing Radiofrequency Safety

NOTE The design of your Palm Treo 800w complies with updated NCRP standards described below.

NOTE In 1991-92, the Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers (IEEE) and the American National Standards Institute (ANSI) joined in updating ANSI's 1982 standard for safety levels with respect to human exposure to RF signals. More than 120 scientists, engineers and physicians from universities, government health agencies and industries developed this updated standard after reviewing the available body of research. In 1993, the Federal Communications Commission (FCC) adopted this updated standard in a regulation. In August 1996, the FCC adopted hybrid standard consisting of the existing ANSI/IEEE standard and the guidelines published by the National Council of Radiation Protection and Measurements (INCRP)

Body-Worn Operation

NOTE To maintain compliance with FCC RF exposure guidelines, if you wear a handset on your body, use the Palm-supplied or approved carrying case, holster, or other body-worn accessory. Use of non-Palm-approved accessories may violate FCC RF exposure guidelines. Be sure to use an accessory that contains NO metal (snaps, clips, etc) and provides AT LEAST 1.5 cm of separation between the users body and the unit.

NOTE For more information about RF exposure, visit the FCC Web site at www.fcc.gov.

Specific Absorption Rate (SAR) for Wireless Phones

The SAR is a value that corresponds to the relative amount of RF energy absorbed in the head of a user of a wireless handset.

The SAR value of a phone is the result of an extensive testing, measuring, and calculation process. It does not represent how much RF the phone emits. All phone models are tested at their highest value in strict laboratory settings. But when in operation, the SAR of a phone can be substantially less than the level reported to the FCC. This is because of a variety of factors including its proximity to a base station antenna, phone design, and other factors. What is important to remember is that each phone meets strict federal guidelines. Variations in SARs do not represent a variation in safety.

All phones must meet the federal standard, which incorporates a substantial margin of safety. As stated above, variations in SAR values between different model phones do not mean variations in safety. SAR values at or below the federal standard of 1.6 W/kg are considered safe for use by the public.

The highest reported (FCC) SAR values of the Palm Treo 800w are:

Maximum Scaled SAR Values (W/kg) FCC				
	CDMA2000 Cellular	CDMA2000 PCS	WLAN	Co-location
Head	0.837	1.420	0.067	1.433
Body	0.577	0.456	0.018	0.595

FCC Radiofrequency Emission

This phone meets the FCC Radiofrequency Emission Guidelines and is certified with the FCC as:

FCC ID # O8F-715

IC ID # 3905A-715

More information on the phone's SAR can be found from the following FCC Web site:

https://gullfoss2.fcc.gov/prod/oet/cf/eas/reports/GenericSearch.cfm.

· Static Electricity, ESD, and Your Smartphone

Electrostatic discharge (ESD) can cause damage to electronic devices if discharged into the device, so you should take steps to avoid such an occurrence.

Description of ESD

Static electricity is an electrical charge caused by the buildup of excess electrons on the surface of a material. To most people, static electricity and ESD are nothing more than annoyances. For example, after walking over a carpet while scuffing your feet, building up electrons on your body, you may get a shock—the discharge event—when you touch a metal doorknob. This little shock discharges the built-up static electricity.

ESD-Susceptible Equipment

Even a small amount of ESD can harm circuitry, so when working with electronic devices, take measures to help protect your electronic devices, including your Palm® smartphone, from ESD harm. While Palm has built protections against ESD into its products, ESD unfortunately exists and, unless neutralized, could build up to levels that could harm your equipment. Any electronic device that contains an external entry point for plugging in anything from cables to docking stations is susceptible to entry of ESD. Devices that you carry with you, such as your smartphone, build up ESD in a unique way because the static electricity that may have built up on your body is automatically passed to the device. Then, when the device is connected to another device such as a docking station, a discharge event can occur.

Precautions Against ESD

Make sure to discharge any built-up static electricity from yourself and your electronic devices before touching an electronic device or connecting one device to another. The recommendation from Palm is that you take this precaution before connecting your smartphone to your computer, placing the smartphone in a cradle, or connecting it to any other device. You can do this in many ways, including the following:

 Ground yourself when you're holding your mobile device by simultaneously touching a metal surface that is at earth ground.
 For example, if your computer has a metal case and is plugged into a standard three-prong grounded outlet, touching the case should discharge the ESD on your body.

- Increase the relative humidity of your environment.
- Install ESD-specific prevention items, such as grounding mats.

Conditions That Enhance ESD Occurrences

Conditions that can contribute to the buildup of static electricity in the environment include the following:

- · Low relative humidity.
- Material type (The type of material gathering the charge. For example, synthetics are more prone to static buildup than natural fibers like cotton.)
- The rapidity with which you touch, connect, or disconnect electronic devices.

While you should always take appropriate precautions to discharge static electricity, if you are in an environment where you notice ESD events, you may want to take extra precautions to protect your electronic equipment against ESD.

Owner's Record

The model number, regulatory number, and serial number are located on a nameplate inside the battery compartment. Record the serial number in the space provided below. This will be helpful if you need to contact us about your phone in the future.

Model: Palm® Treo™ 800w

Serial No.:

User's Guide Proprietary Notice

CDMA Technology is licensed by QUALCOMM Incorporated under one or more of the following patents:

4,901,307 5,109,390 5,267,262 5,416,797 5,506,865 5,544,196 5,657,420 5,101,501 5,267,261 5,414,796 5,504,773 5,535,239 5,600,754 5,778,338 5,228,054 5,337,338 5,710,784 5,056,109 5,568,483 5,659,569 5,490,165 5,511,073

Specifications

Radio	CDMA2000 with EVDO
Phone features	Personal speakerphone
	Hands-free headset jack (2.5 mm, 3-barrel connector)
	Microphone mute option
	TTY compatible
Processor technology	Samsung processor—300MHz
Expansion	miniSD card slot
Battery	Rechargeable Lithium-ion
	1200mAh power
	Removable for replacement
	3 hours full charge time
Operating system	Windows Mobile® 6 Professional
Camera	Still image capture resolution:1280 x 1024, 1.3 megapixel
	2x digital zoom
Size	• 4.44 in. x 2.34 in. x 0.84 in.
	(112.9mm x 59.3mm x 21.3mm)
Weight	• 5.4 ounces (154 grams)
Connectivity	Infrared (1.0 compliant)
	Bluetooth® wireless technology (1.2 compliant)

Display	 Touch-sensitive LCD screen 65,536 colors (16-bit color) Resolution: 240 x 240 User-adjustable brightness 	(includes stylus)	
Keyboard	,	Built-in QWERTY keyboard plus 5-way navigator Backlight for low lighting conditions	
Included software	 Today/Phone (includes Speed Dial and Dial Pad) Messaging (text, multimedia, and email) Internet Explorer Mobile (web browser) Camera Pictures & Videos Windows Media Player Mobile File Explorer Contacts Calendar Tasks 	 Notes Calculator ActiveSync® Excel Mobile Word Mobile PowerPoint Mobile Voice Command Quick Tour Search Terminal Services Picsel PDF Viewer Bluetooth Plug-in 	

System requirements	Windows XP or Vista (later versions may also be supported)
	32MB of available memory (RAM)
	170MB of free hard disk space
	Available USB port
Operating and storage	• 32°F to 104°F (0°C to 40°C)
temperature range	• 5% to 90% RH

Index

SYMBOLS

! on battery icon 12

NUMERICS

112 calls 37, 245
1st day of week option 181
3GP files 163
3GPP files 123, 160
3GPP2 files 123, 160
5-way navigator 7, 19, 21, 284
911 calls 37, 245

Α

AC charger 11, 79
accented characters 28, 29
accessing
ActiveSync 78
alternate characters 28
applications 30, 240
calculator 231
Calendar application 176
Contacts application 173
Dial Pad 41
File Explorer 218
information 31, 252

Internet Explorer 137 menu items 22, 23, 24 Messaging app 121 Notes application 185 on-device help 287 online address books 107 options in lists 24 Outlook folders 275 Palm online support 287 PDF Viewer 193 Phone Settings screen 15 Pictures & Videos application 159, 160, 164, 166 Ouick Tour 287 remote files 256 speed-dial buttons 38 spreadsheet templates Tasks application 183 Tasks entry bar 185 the Internet 256, 270 Today screen 14, 31 web pages 137, 139, 141, 281 Wireless Manager 36 accounts

conference calls and 48

customer service support for 287 missing phone numbers and 16 preventing unauthorized use of 245, 252 removing email 99 troubleshooting 278 Accounts tab 99, 105, 110 action keys 7, 22 actions 22, 238 activating items on screen 22 active call info 44 active calls. See phone calls ActiveSvnc defined 289 installing 71 opening 78 receiving email and 103 synchronizing with 71, 73, 261, 272 troubleshooting 261, 272-ActiveSync icon 78, 81, 191, ActiveSync Plug-in for Bluetooth 86 Add a new VPN server connection option 257

Add Contact prompt 46 Add Favorite dialog box 139 Add Media command 124 Add Picture command 124 Add Recipient command 121 Add Server Source command 82 Add Sound command 124 Add to Contacts command 127 Add to Favorites command 139	folders 198 notes 174, 185, 186 online address book 106– 107 passkeys 146 signatures 110, 131 speed-dial buttons 50 spreadsheets 200 tasks 183 untimed events 178, 179 address book 106, 107, 112, 175, 275	Advanced tab (Power Settings) 254 advancing slides 199, 200 After calls from numbers option 60 Agenda View (calendar) 176 alarm clock 251 alarm sounds 252 alarms adding 178, 183 setting 238, 251 turning on and off 237
Add to Personal Address	Address List Lookup 217	Alarms tab 251
Book command 275	address messaging options	albums 160
adding	112	alert tones. See alarms;
a second call 47	Address tab 107, 112	ringtones
applications 240	addresses	aligning the screen 239
appointments 177, 179	adding 173	alignment settings
attachments to email 102,	checking for 112	documents 197
117, 219	copying 275	spreadsheets 200
bookmarks 139	entering email 102, 112	Allow cookies check box 142
bulleted or numbered lists	entering web 32, 137	Allow USB connections
197	looking up corporate 217	check box 273
caller ID pictures 174	multiple recipients and	Alt key 26, 289
connections 256, 257	102, 122	alternate characters 28, 29
contacts 46, 60, 173	selecting 22, 281	alternate characters list 28,
document templates 195	synchronizing 275	29
expansion cards 226	adjusting screen brightness	AMR files 122
files to playlists 167	238	animation 163, 199, 200

anniversaries 179 Answer button 42 answering the phone 42, 47 Appearance tab 235, 240 application icons 30, 241 applications See also third-party applications associating with buttons 241 battery life and 13 caution for hard resets and 263 choosing menu items in 23, 24 closing 30, 254 copying 229 customizing 240–245 deleting 222, 284 displaying 30, 254 downloading 219, 221 error reporting for 252 included with device 302 installing 219–220, 283, 284 losing information in 263 moving through 20, 21	opening 30, 228, 240 phone calls and 45 reinstalling 261, 263 running from expansion cards 228, 284 running multiple 30 selecting 30 storing 284 synchronizing information in 73, 88 troubleshooting 264, 266 turning sounds on or off for 237 viewing memory usage for 253 Appointment tab 177 appearing in wrong time slots 276 deleting 180, 181 hiding 180 marking as private 180 reminders for 178 scheduling repeating 179 viewing 176 Appointments tab 182	ascending sort order 208 ASF files 160 Assign a program list 241 attachments adding 102, 117, 219 downloading 104, 105 embedded objects in 106 internal memory and 284 opening 104 storing 105, 113 troubleshooting 280 Attendees option 179 audio 42, 159, 163 auto-completion options 243 AutoCorrect command 162 Autofill option 205 AutoFilter settings (spreadsheets) 201 auto-keyguard feature 245, 246 Auto-Keyguard list 246 Automatically download MMS messages check box 131 auto-off interval 289 available memory 253
moving to expansion cards	Appointments tab 182 Area code option 175	available memory 253 available storage space 253
229	arrow icons 19	

B back view (device) 8	battery door 10 battery door release 8	creating partnerships for 145
backgrounds 154, 161, 169, 235	battery icon 12 Battery Power tab 27	discovery setting for 147 phone calls and 56
backing up information 69, 261, 263	battery status icons 67 Battery tab 254	receiving information over 145, 147
backlight (keyboard) 26, 255 backlight shut-off interval 27	Beam File command 223 Beam tab 225	sending information over 145, 147
Backspace key <mark>22, 26, 28</mark> backup and restore	Beam command 224 beaming 14, 219, 223–225,	troubleshooting 271 Bluetooth icon 56, 68, 144
application 81	289 birthdays 179	Bluetooth Plug-in 144 Bluetooth Settings screen
backup utilities <mark>261, 263, 264, 277</mark>	blank screens 267	144–147
backups, restoring <mark>264, 277</mark> battery	Block incoming calls list 61 Block outgoing calls list 61	Bluetooth wireless technology 135, 224, 289
Bluetooth connections and 144	blocking phone calls 60 Bluetooth connections	BMP files 159 Bold option 196
charging 11–12 conserving power for 255	battery level and 144 battery life and 14	bookmarks 139 See also favorites
disposing of 264, 298	checking status of 56 communicating over 54	border highlight 21 borders 200
inserting 10 maximizing life of 13–14	hands-free devices and 54, 55, 56	brightness, adjusting 238 browsing files and folders
purchasing 11 removing 263, 265	overview 143	218, 230
replacing 264–265 specifications for 301	synchronizing over 86 Bluetooth devices	browsing the web. <i>See</i> web browsing
viewing remaining power for 254 viewing status of 67	beaming to 225 connecting to 54–56,	built-in applications 222, 302 built-in camera. <i>See</i> camera bulleted lists 197
vioving status of 07		

bullets 193 Burst mode 156 button settings 169 buttons assigning to media files 169 assigning voice commands to 241 associating with applications 241 creating speed-dial 50	Calculator icon 231 calendar adding items to 178, 179 displaying 176 removing events 181 setting alarms for 178 setting options for 181 unavailable slots on 180 Calendar application adding contacts and 173 customizing 181–182	call-waiting notifications 62 camcorder icon 155 camera battery life and 13 capturing videos with 156–157 specifications for 301 taking pictures 154–156 troubleshooting 282 camera lens 8 Camera Preview Mode 282
disabling 246 editing speed-dial 52 opening menus and 22 reassigning 241 selecting or activating 21	managing schedules with 177–181 selecting views 176 starting 176 untimed events in 178	camera settings 157–159 Camera tab 158 Cancel Bluetooth command 56 capitalization 27, 245
showing voicemail 51 turning sounds on or off for 237	calendar options 181–182 Calendar views 176, 181, 182	Capitalize first letter of sentence check box 245 Caps Lock icon 27
Buttons icon 241 Buttons list 241	call forwarding 49	Caps Lock mode 27
Buttons screen 241 Buttons tab (Options) 169	call forwarding icon 49 Call Log 40 Call Sender command 127	captions 124 Carrier call forwarding and 49
C CAB files 221 calculations 203, 204, 231 Calculator application 231 calculator buttons 232	call waiting 47 call-barring password 61 caller ID applications 283 caller ID blocking 46 caller ID pictures 154, 174 caller IDs 61	conference calls and 48 cascading menus 24 case-sensitive searching 195, 210 categories contacts 174

events 180	scrolling 20	closing
playlists 167	text messages and 121,	applications 30, 254
tasks 183, 184	122	menus 24
cell patterns (spreadsheets)	typing alternate 28	notification messages 126
200	charge indicator 7, 12	screens 21
certificates 137, 252	charger cable 11	color settings 282
Certificates icon 252	charging	color themes 235, 240
Certificates screen 252	device 11, 13	command button 242, 243
changes, undoing 162	device battery 11–12	commands 22, 242
changing	charging status 12	See also menus; voice
alarm sounds 252	Chart command 209	commands
color themes 235, 240	chart options 209	Company Directory
connections 256	charts 201, 209	command 108
contacts 174	Chat icon 128	company names 41, 174
date and time settings 250	chat sessions 128, 131	comparisons 208
email accounts 99	Chat tab 132	completed tasks 183, 184
information 209	check boxes 21	components (Treo device) 3
picture or video resolution	chronological list of calls 40	compressed files 219
155, 156, 282	Clear Cookies button 143	computers
PIN numbers 248	Clear History button 142	connecting to 79
speed-dial buttons 52	Clear Now Playing command	installing from 221, 222
text 195	168	reinstalling desktop
text size 238	Clear Type tab 238	software on 261
character entry 29	clearing web links 142	synchronizing with 87, 89
character sets 142	Clock & Alarms icon 250,	system requirements 75
characters	251	viewing videos and
capitalizing 27, 245	Clock & Alarms Settings	pictures on 153
entering 26, 27, 204, 243	screen 250, 251	Conference button 48
phone calls and 51		conference calls 48

	1 1 10 407 447	addragaing magagagas to
confidential events 180 Confidential option 180 configurations troubleshooting 270 Configure Server command 280 configuring data services 270 mail servers 280 TTY devices 59 Confirm message deletions check box 131 confirmation messages 132 Connect command 257 Connect via Bluetooth command 87 Connect via IR command 87 connecting charger cable 11 device to PCs 79 headsets 52 to Bluetooth devices 54 56, 143–146 to hands-free car kits 54 to mobile networks 268 to service providers 256 to the Internet 256, 270	to web sites 137, 147 connection icons 257 Connection Settings command 273 connections adding 256, 257 changing 256 displaying 256 ending 257 losing 271 manually starting 257 precautions for 300 removing Bluetooth 146 setting up 256–257 setting up wireless 148 timing out 278 troubleshooting 267–272, 281 trusted devices and 147 Connections icon 256 Connections screen 256, 257, 270, 271 Connections tab 225, 256 connectivity specs 301 conserving battery power 255 contact categories 174	addressing messages to 102, 112, 121, 123 assigning ringtones to 51, 59, 161, 174 changing 174 displaying 174 linking speed-dial buttons to 50 looking up 32, 38, 175 making calls to 38 personalizing 59 removing 175 saving information for 46 selecting communication method for 39 sending messages to 122 179 viewing details list for 39 Contacts application 173– 175 Contacts list 39, 47, 122, 127, 175 context-sensitive menus 24 continuous playback (slides) 200 cookies 137 Copy command 141, 161,
to the Internet 256, 270 to TTY devices 59 to VPNs 256–257	contact categories 174 contacts adding 46, 60, 173	Copy command 141, 161, 196, 229

copying addresses 275 applications 229 items in folders 219 phone numbers 40, 41, 141 pictures and videos 161 text 141, 196 copyrighted items 160 corporate mail systems 256, 280 corporate networks 252 corporate servers 256, 280 coupling 285 coverage area 14, 35, 268 Create chat from messages option 132 creating appointments 177, 179 bookmarks 139 bulleted or numbered lists 197 caller ID pictures 174 connections 256, 257 contacts 46, 60, 173	notes 185, 186 online address book 106– 107 partnerships 145 passkeys 146 playlists 167 signatures 110, 131 speed-dial buttons 50 spreadsheets 200 tasks 183 templates 127, 195, 202 text messages 121 untimed events 178, 179 video ringtones 161 workbooks 202 credentials 257, 278 cropping pictures 162 currency symbols 239 Currency tab 239 customer assistance 287 Customize the playlists check box 164 customizing applications 240–245 Calendar 181–182	email settings 110 Excel Mobile 211 format settings 239 Internet Explorer Mobile 142–143 Media Player Mobile 168 Messaging application 130–133 network settings 133 Notes application 187 phone 57–65 system settings 250–255 system sounds 236 tasks 184 Today screen 235 voicemail system 51, 58 Word Mobile 198 Cut command 161, 196 cutting. See deleting D daily schedules 176 data 263 See also information data connection icons 257
documents 193, 194, 195 email messages 102	camera 157–159 chat settings 131	data filters 181, 208 data formats 239
folders 198 multimedia messages 122	Contacts application 175 dates and time 250	data service icons 268

data service providers 256, 270, 279	Delete command 130, 198, 211	web files 142 workbooks 211
data services 3, 268, 270	Delete Contact command	worksheets 211
data transmission speeds 3	175	descending sort order 208
date format settings 239	Delete Files button 142	Desktop option 138
Date tab 239	Delete Task command 184	desktop software 261, 289
dates 205, 239, 250	Deleted folder 113, 284	See also applications;
See also calendar	deleting	software
Day View 176, 181	applications 222, 284	device
day-planner formats 176	Bluetooth connections	additional information for
decimal places 239	146	287
decimal symbols 239	certificates 252	caution for resetting 263
decompression utility 219	contacts 175	caution for storing 8
default document template	directory services 107	charging 11, 13
198	documents 198	compatibility with
default format settings 239	email accounts 99	third-party vendors 73
Default mode option 187	events 181	compatible hands-free
Default option 138	favorites 140	devices for 54
default PINs 247	files 219, 284	
	items from libraries 166	components of 3, 7–9
Default template option 187		connecting to PCs 79
Default zoom level options	items from playlists 167	disabling touch-sensitivity for 246
245 defined names		
	messages 112, 130, 131	features described 3
(spreadsheets) 207	notes 187	freeing space on 222, 284
delays 36, 270	partnerships 146, 271	getting help with 259, 28
Delete Appointment	pictures 162	getting phone number for
command 180, 181	speed-dial buttons 52	15
Delete Cells command 210	tasks 184	locking 248
	text 22	losing 81, 249

low lighting conditions and 26 management tools for 215 moving around on 17 not responding 262, 268, 283 personalizing 233 required items for 4 resetting 248, 262–264, 268 setting up 9–16 specifications for 301 system requirements for 303 third-party applications and 282, 283 troubleshooting 287	configuring TTY/TTD 59 discovering trusted 143, 144, 147 electrostatic discharge and 299 physically-impaired disabilities and 59 transferring information from 261 troubleshooting 271 Devices tab 145, 271 diagnostic information 252 Dial Lookup list 15 Dial Pad 39, 41 dialing 14, 36–40, 41, 51 dialog boxes 290 digit grouping 239	discoverable setting 147 discovering trusted devices 143, 144, 147 disk space 303 See also memory Dismiss button 44 display formats 239 Display message on screen check box 238 display options (web) 138 display settings 238–240 See also screen displaying alternate characters 28 animated images 163 applications on device 30 appointments 176
turning on and off 36 unlocking 248 updating information on	digital cameras 159 See also camera digital certificates 137, 252	calendar 176 contacts 39, 174 current connection 256
69	dimmed images 267	daily schedules 176
device names. See	Direct Push Technology 82	events 178, 180
usernames	directory service 106, 107,	folder contents 218
Device Setup Wizard 164	112	memory usage 253
devices	Disable touchscreen check	multimedia messages 128
See also Bluetooth	box 247	notifications 58, 238
devices; device	Disconnect Bluetooth	on-device help 287
battery life and 13	command 87	PDF files 193
beaming to 224	Disconnect command 258	pictures 153, 154, 159

power settings 254 Quick Tour documentation 287	unsupported features for 193 documents list 199	scrolling through 20 selecting items in 22, 25 drop-down menus 24
running applications 254	DOT files 193	E
space on expansion cards 230, 254 tasks 184 videos 153, 154, 159 web pages 137, 138 wireless settings 255 DOC files 193 document file types 193, 199 documentation 4, 287 documents See also Word Mobile application creating 193, 194, 195 deleting 198 finding and replacing text in 195 moving or copying text in 196 opening 194 organizing 198 saving 193, 194, 196, 198 sending 91 setting margins for 197 spell-checking 197	downloading applications 219, 221 attachments 104, 105 email 84, 103, 104 files 140 images 141, 163 multimedia messages 126, 131 Palm-specific information and updates 287 pictures 159 ringtones 57 videos 163 Downloads favorite 141 downward-pointing arrows 24 drained battery 13 drawing 185 drivers 262 Drop and Answer command 48 drop-down lists accessing 24 exiting 25	earpiece 7, 285 echoes 285 EDGE connections 290 Edit command 162, 174 Edit Server Settings screen 82 Edit Speed Dial command 52 editing. See changing electrostatic discharge 300 email adding address book for 106–107 adding attachments to 102, 117, 219 addressing 102, 112 creating 102 deleting 112, 113 dialing from 41 downloading 84, 103, 104 entering contacts and 173, 179 forwarding 109 getting from corporate servers 256, 280
supported features for 193	highlighting in 20, 25	301 VC13 200, 200

getting from Exchange servers 103 internal memory and 284 priority settings for 103 receiving attachments with 104 reply options for 112 requirements for 3 selecting addresses 22 sending 103, 104, 117, 139, 279	Enable local network time check box 251 encoding options 142 encryption 137 End Show command 199 End User License Agreement 4 ending active calls 45 data connections 257 playback 165	entry fields deleting text in 22 highlighting in 20, 22 moving to 20 opening drop-down lists in 25 scrolling through 20 Erase all data? prompt 264 erasing. See deleting error messages 237, 277 error reporting 252–253
troubleshooting 278 email applications 281 E-mail button 104 email client software 280 email message icons 129 embedded images 106 emergency calls 37, 245 emoticons 122 Enable Clear Type check box 238 Enable fixed dialing check box 64	numbers 26, 27 owner information 249 passkeys 55, 146 passwords 83, 95, 98, 248, 249 phone numbers 14, 36, 39, 41 PINs 247 text 244, 245 web addresses 32, 137 Entire column option 211 Entire row option 211	box 131 event categories 180 event icons 182 Event list 238 events creating 178, 179 deleting 181 filtering 181 hiding 180 marking as sensitive 180 reminders for 178 selecting sounds for 238

setting notification	troubleshooting 278, 280	Extract command 49
preferences for 238 Events check box 237 Excel files 189 See also Excel Mobile; spreadsheets	exiting applications 30, 254 expanding lists in fields 25 expansion card slot 8, 226, 301 expansion cards	F factory settings 169 factory-installed applications 222, 302
Excel Mobile application customizing 211 display settings for 203 overview 200 searching in 209 starting 202 supported features 200 unsupported features 201	as storage medium 284 browsing on 230 displaying available space on 230, 254 inserting 226–227 installing apps on 222 moving apps to 229 moving information to	favorites 139–140 See also web pages Favorites button 140 Favorites command 140 features 3 Federal Trade Commission website 253 feedback 285
Excel Mobile icon 202	198, 210, 229	fields. See entry fields
Exchange ActiveSync 280, 290, 293 Exchange Address Book 275	opening items on 228 removing 227 renaming 230	File Explorer 217, 218–219, 230, 231 File Explorer icon 218
Exchange server credentials screen 278	searching on 217, 219 storing attachments on	file names 196, 198, 217 file types
Exchange server sync options 84, 278	105, 113 transferring files to 163,	displaying 199 documents 193
Exchange servers accessing 175 getting email from 103 setting up accounts for 82–84 synchronizing with 13, 72, 87, 277	166, 228, 229 types supported 226 extensions (phone) 51 external power sources 254 External Power tab 27 Extra Digits button 43, 51 Extra Digits text box 51	Media Player 163 multimedia 122 pictures 159 videos 160 files accessing from corporate accounts 256

browsing 218 decompressing 219 deleting 219, 284 downloading 140 moving 198, 219 saving 228 searching for 217, 219 selecting multiple 219 transferring to expansion cards 163, 166, 228, 229 fill series (spreadsheets) 205 Filter command 174, 181 Filter option 184 filtering events 181 information 174, 208 tasks 184 filters 181, 208 Find Online command 175 Find/Replace command 195, 209 finding contacts 32, 38, 175 information 209 text 195 firewalls 272 5-way navigator 7, 19, 21,	fixed dialing 63 folder names 198 folders accessing Outlook 275 adding documents to 196 arranging pictures and videos in 161 browsing 218, 230 creating 140, 198 moving items to 198, 210, 219 opening items in 219 organizing web favorites in 139, 140 sorting contents 219 synchronizing messages in 103 Font color option 196 Font option 196 Font option 196 fonts 194, 196, 201, 238 footers 194 footnotes 194 forgetting passwords 248 format settings 239 formats, losing 193 formatting charts 209	spreadsheets 200, 207 system data 239 text 196 Formatting toolbar 197 forms (web) 139 formulas 201, 204, 211 Forward command 109 forwarding messages 109, 127 phone calls 49 freeing memory 222, 277, 284 Freeze Panes option 203 front view (device) 7 full charge (battery) 11 Full Screen option 138 functions (spreadsheets) 201, 204 G games 13 getting started 4, 5, 14, 287 GIF files 123, 159, 163 Global Address List 106, 107, 175 Global Address List Lookup 217 Glossary 289
284	paragraphs and lists 197	Go to Slide command 199

GPRS connections 290 graphics programs 162	disabling Keyguard and 246	hypertext links. See links
H HAC setting 297 Hands Free check box 56, 271 hands-free car kit 53, 56 hands-free devices connecting to 54 setting up 52 tips for 57 troubleshooting 271 turning Keyguard on or off for 246 hanging indents 197 hanging up phone 15, 45 hard resets 248, 263 hardware 3 Hardware buttons check box 237 headers 194 headset button 53	hearing-impaired 59 heat sources 14 help 259, 287 Help topics 30 hiding appointments 180 events 180 images 138 speed-dial buttons 38 Tasks entry bar 185 highlight 21 Highlight option 197 highlighting applications 30 items in folders 219 items on screen 20, 21– 22 menu items 23, 24 options in lists 20, 25 text 22, 197	icons application 30, 241 battery status 12 data connections 257 data services 268 email 129 events 182 message status 129 navigator 19 phone status 66 signal-strength 35, 255 Identification tab 249 Ignore with text message command 42 image file types 159 image files 123, 153, 284 images See also pictures dimmed 267 downloading 141
headset button 33 headset jack 7 headsets configuring as trusted devices 144 connecting 52–54	Hint tab 249 hints (passwords) 249 History command 141, 166 History list 141, 142 Hold button 45 home locations 250 Home page option 142	hiding web page 138 incorrect color settings and 282 receiving 106 setting background 161 235

troubleshooting web page 281 IMAP accounts 94, 96, 105 inactivity 156, 157, 254 Inbox 20, 103, 129 Inbox application 102, 106 Include file attachments check box 105 incorrect passwords 248 Indentation setting 197 indented lists 194 indenting text 197 indicator light 7, 12 information accessing 31, 252 backing up 69, 261, 263 changing 209 entering 27–28 erasing all 272 filtering 174, 208 losing 193, 263 moving 198, 210, 229 protecting 245–249 removing battery and 264 restoring 263, 264 searching for 195, 210, 217–218 sharing 223 sorting 208	storing 225, 284 synchronizing 71, 73, 272 transferring 69, 261 updating 69 infrared port. See IR port infrared transmissions 87, 290 Input icon 243 input options 26, 243 Input screen 243, 244 inserting expansion cards 226–227 installation, troubleshooting 264, 283 installing ActiveSync 71 applications 219–220, 283, 284 bonus software 220 SIM smartcards 9–16 synchronization software 75, 76, 77 VPN clients 256 Windows drivers 262 instant messaging applications 283 internal memory. See memory Internet 256, 270	See also web browsing; websites Internet Connection Sharing 147 Internet Connection Speed option 169 Internet Explorer Mobile browsing with 137–142 closing 139 customizing 142–143 installing from 221 scrolling in 20 starting 137 unsupported elements for 137, 281 IR connections 225 IR port 8, 87, 224, 290 ISP mail systems 96 ISP settings 256 ISPs (Internet Service Providers) 256, 279 Italics option 197 Items tab 235 J JavaScript 137 JPEG files 123 JPG files 159
--	---	---

K	Library list 165	selecting items in 22, 25
keyboard	Library screen 165, 169	Lithium Ion battery 290
accessing alternate	Library tab 169	See also battery
characters on 28	lightening bolt 12	locating
dialing from 36	Li-lon battery 290	contacts 32, 38, 175
entering information from	See also battery	information 209
27–28, 245	links	location-specific information
locking 246	clearing web 142	239, 250
scrolling with 20	internal memory and 284	Lock icon 137, 160, 248
selecting menu items	media files and 166	Lock screen 248
from 24	messages and 129, 139 selecting 21, 138	locking SIM smartcards 247
setting key combinations	troubleshooting 281	spreadsheet rows and
for 241	list separators 239	columns 203
specifications for 302	List setting 197	the keyboard 246
troubleshooting 284	Listen button 44	the screen 246
keyboard backlight 26, 255	listening to	Treo device 248
keyboard icon 26	media files 163	logging in to
Keyguard 246 Keyguard icon 246	voicemail messages 44	corporate servers 256
Known Caller option 57	lists	networks 252
Known Caller option 57	accessing 24	looking up contacts 32, 38,
L	creating 194, 197	175
language-impaired 59	displaying alternate	lookup feature 217
leading zeros 239	characters and 28	losing
left action key 22, 177	exiting 25	connections 271
Legacy Pocket Word files	formatting 197	information 193, 263
194	highlighting in 20, 25	passwords 248
libraries (media) 166	navigating web page 139	Treo device 81, 249
Library command 165	scrolling through 20	low coverage areas 268

low lighting conditions 26 lowercase letters 27 M magnet 8 magnification. See zoom settings mail servers 256, 280 Main tab 253 Make the device discoverable check box 144 Make this device discoverable setting 147 Manage existing connections option 256, 257 Manage Folders command 103 Manage tab 237 management tools 215 manually closing applications 31 MAPI clients 280 maps 281 margins 197 Match case box 195, 210 Match whole words only check box 195, 210 measurement units 239	media files creating playlists for 167 formats for 163 linking to 166 playing 164 synchronizing 164 transferring 163, 166 troubleshooting 276 media libraries 166 Media Player 276 Media Player Mobile 163– 169 media players 13 Media sync option 164 meeting invitations accepting/declining 116 meeting requests 106, 107, 179, 182 memory available 303 freeing 222, 277, 284 low conditions for 31, 253 running apps and 30, 228 storing numbers in 232 viewing expansion card 230 memory buttons 232 Memory icon 230 memory options (web) 142	Memory screen 253 Memory Settings screen 31 Memory tab 142 memory usage 253 memos. See messages; notes menu items 23 Menu key 23, 24 menus 22–24 Menus icon 240 Menus screen 240 Message Details command 127 message list 128, 129 Message Options command 125 Message Options screen 125 Message Priority list 125 message status icons 129 Message tab 111 Message validity period option 131 messages See also multimedia messages; text messages; text adding signatures to 110, 131
--	---	--

addressing 102, 122, 123 automatically resending	status icons in 129 messaging applications 283	Mobile Device component (Windows) 291
131	messaging services 270,	Mobile Device folder 78,
creating email 102	290	221, 222
deleting 112, 130, 131	microphone 7, 45, 159, 285	mobile devices 224, 261
dialing from 41	microphone icon 242	mobile networks 267, 268
displaying notification 238	Microsoft ActiveSync. See	mobile phone numbers 173
displaying status of 129	ActiveSync	Mobile to Market certificates
forwarding 109, 127	Microsoft Exchange	220
invalid characters and 122	ActiveSync. See Exchange	Mode tab 144
listening to 44	ActiveSync	model numbers 300
receiving notifications for	Microsoft Office 189	Modem tab 256
126, 132, 270	Microsoft Office Excel 201	ModemLink application 147
saving 103	See also spreadsheets	modems 147
sorting 130	Microsoft Windows Mobile	Modify Sheets command
storing 284	software 220	208, 211
Messages tab 131	Microsoft Windows Mobile	Month View 177
Messaging application	website 261	most recently dialed
See also text messages;	Microsoft Word documents.	numbers list 40
multimedia messages	See documents	moving
adding contacts and 173	MIDI files 122	documents to folders 198,
chat sessions and 128	miniSD cards 225	219
customizing 130-133	mirror 8, 155	files to expansion cards
email settings in 110	Missed call option 57	163, 166, 228, 229
messaging options in 125	MMS files 166	information 198, 210, 229
notification options in 126	MMS messaging 121, 290	pictures and videos 161
overview 121	mobile accounts. See	speed-dial buttons 52
play options in 127	accounts	text 196
starting 121		workbooks 210

moving around the screen 19–21 moving through web pages 138 MP3 files 163 MP4 files 163 MPEG files 160 MPEG4 files 123 multi-connector 7 multi-line fields 20 multimedia features 119, 151 multimedia file types 160 multimedia files 159, 284 multimedia messages creating 122 deleting 130, 131 displaying 128 downloading 126, 131 forwarding 127 internal memory and 284 opening 126 overview 119 phone numbers in 41 playing 126–128	saving 127 sending 123, 125, 128 setting options for 125 sorting 130 troubleshooting 270 Multimedia Messaging System. See MMS messaging multiple recipients 102, 122 music 42, 163, 165, 237 See also media files music files 276 Mute command 45 My Device folder 218 My Device library 166 My Documents folder 217, 218, 263 My Pictures folder 154, 156 My Playlists category 167 My Storage Card library 166 My Text command 102 My Text phrases 102 N names 32, 293	groups of pictures 158 speed-dial buttons 50 templates 195, 202 workbooks 210 worksheets 206, 208 navigating the screen 19–21 navigating web pages 138 navigator. See 5-way navigator buttons 19, 21 negative numbers 239 network protocols 168 network settings 64, 133 Network tab 64, 168 networks changing 65 connecting to 65 logging in to 252 troubleshooting 267–272 New Account command 94, 96 New Appointment command 177, 178 New MMS command 123 New Partnership option 145
phone numbers in 41		New MMS command 123

notes adding 174, 183 creating 185, 186 removing 187 saving 187 Notes application 185–188 Notes icon 185 Notes list 186, 187 Notes tab 174, 249 notification options 126, 132, 238 notification screens. See notifications Notifications changing event 238	receiving voicemail 44 setting ringtones for 57 setting system sounds for 237 silencing sounds for 236 troubleshooting 270 Notifications check box 237 Notifications check box 237 Notifications tab 57, 237 Now Playing playlist 167, 168 Now Playing screen 167 number format settings 239 number pad 14 number sign symbol 239 Number tab 239 numbered lists 197	OK button 7, 31 One Column option 138 online address book 106, 107, 112, 175 online support (Palm) 287 Open URL command 166 opening ActiveSync 78 alternate characters list 28 applications 30, 228, 240 attachments 104 calculator 231 Dial Pad 41 documents 194 email applications 281 File Explorer 218
displaying 58 downloading sounds for 57 enabling or disabling 238 phone calls and 62 previewing sounds for 58 receiving messages and 126, 132 receiving phone calls and 47 receiving transmissions and 147	See also phone numbers entering 26, 27 formatting 201, 205 pasting into Calculator 232 Off Hold button 45 Office Outlook. See Outlook Office Word documents. See documents offline synchronization 275 Off-peak times options 85	menus 22, 24 multimedia messages 126 on-device help 287 Outlook folders 275 PDF Viewer 193 Phone Settings screen 15 Quick Tour 287 templates 202 text messages 127 Today screen 14, 31 web pages 137, 139, 141 Wireless Manager 36

operating system (device) 266, 293, 301 operating systems (PCs) 75 Option key 20, 26, 27, 291 Option Lock icon 27 Option Lock mode 27 options displaying 180 highlighting 20, 21, 25 selecting 24, 25 Options screen (ActiveSync) 88 Options screen (Internet Explorer) 142 Options screen (messaging) 105, 110, 111, 113, 114, 130 Options tab 235, 244, 249 organizer features 36, 171 orientation (screen) 240 orientation options 240 Orientation tab 200 outages 270 Outbox 129 Outlook accessing folders for 275	downloading messages from 103, 105 email client software and 280 installing drivers for 262 synchronizing with 82, 108 Outlook E-mail screen 94, 96, 102 overdue tasks 184 Override playback options 200 owner information 249 Owner Information icon 249 Owner Information screen 249 P page breaks 194 paired relationships. See partnerships pairing. See partnerships Palm (online support) 287 Palm applications 221 Palm devices 79, 261 Paragraph formatting 197 paragraph formatting 197	passkeys 55, 146 Password tab 248 Password type list 248 passwords call-blocking and 61 corporate email accounts and 83, 98 entering 83, 95, 98, 248, 249 forgetting or losing 248 locking device and 246, 248 saving 95, 98 spreadsheets and 201 Paste command 161, 196 patches 222 patterns in workbooks 200 Pause playback option 127, 168 PDF files 193 PDF Viewer 193, 211 Peak times options 85 performance 266, 283 Personal Address Book 275 personal computers connecting to 79 installing from 221, 222
accessing folders for 275 copying addresses to 275	paragraph formatting 197 partial battery icon 12 partnerships 145, 271, 291	0

synchronizing with 87, 89 system requirements 75 viewing videos and pictures on 153 personal events 180	ringtones for 57, 58 running applications and 45 selecting wireless band for 62	See also headsets Phone icon 247 phone lock feature 245 phone numbers See also phone; phone
personal identification	silencing ringer 42	calls
numbers (PINs) 63, 247, 292	specifications for 301 waking up screen for 45	assigning to speed-dial buttons 50
personal information 248,	phone calls	copying 40, 41, 141
249, 290	See also phone; phone	entering 14, 36, 39, 41
personal information	numbers	entering extra digits with 51
managers <mark>275, 292</mark> <i>See also</i> PIM applications	adding a second 47 blocking 60	locating device 15
Personal option 180	ending 15, 45	missing from Phone
Personal tab 57	forwarding 49	Settings screen 16
personalizing your device	hands-free devices and	redialing most recent 40
233	53, 56, 57	saving 46
phone See also phone calls;	making 14, 36, 41, 44, 127	selecting 22
phone numbers; device	placing on hold 45	Phone Off message 35, 29 Phone Settings screen 15,
adjusting volume 15, 59	receiving 42, 44	16, 60, 247
advanced features 44–50	receiving notifications for	phone status icons 66
answering 42, 47	62	Phone tab 60
customizing 57-65	restricting 63	Phone/Send button 7, 15,
dialing 14, 36-40, 41, 51	sending to voicemail 42	37, 291
disabling touch-sensitive	setting up conference 48	Phone/Send icon 37
feature for 246	troubleshooting 271, 285	phone-off icon 13, 35
hanging up 15, 45	Phone dialog box 41	photo albums 160
network settings for 64	phone headset 52–54	photos. See pictures

pick lists	receiving 154	sounds 159
accessing 24	saving 158	voice notes 186
exiting 25	sending 160	voicemail messages 44
highlighting in 20, 25	setting default size 158	playlists 163, 164, 167
scrolling through 20	storing 284	plug-ins 137, 236
selecting items in 22, 25	synchronizing 153	POP accounts 94, 96
Picsel PDF Viewer 211	taking 154–156, 282	pop-up menus 24
picture files 123, 153	viewing 153, 154, 159	port numbers 257
picture formats 159	Pictures & Videos application	ports. See IR port; USB ports
Picture Speed Dial button 51	157, 159–163	Power icon 254
picture speed-dial buttons	PIM applications 289, 292	Power screen 254
38, 50	PIMs 262, 275, 292	Power/End button 7, 35
pictures	PIN unlock key 292	PowerPoint files 189
adding as backgrounds	PINs 63, 247, 292	PowerPoint Mobile
161, 235	Play button 165	application 199-200
adding as screensaver 158	Play Slide Show command	PowerPoint Mobile icon 199
adding sounds to 124	160	precautions 300
adding to messages 124	Play Sound box 58	preferences 131, 233
adjusting resolution of	Play sound check box 238	See also customizing
155, 162	Play Sound list 252	preinstalled applications 222,
creating caller ID 174	playback icons 51	302
default resolution settings	playback options 168, 200	presentations 199, 200
for 282	Playback screen 168, 169	See also PowerPoint
deleting 162	Playback tab 168, 200	Mobile
downloading 159	playing	Preview Message command
editing 162	media files 164	125
hiding on web pages 138	multimedia messages	Preview Mode (camera) 282
naming groups of 158	126–128	previewing
previewing 156, 157, 282	presentations 199, 200	multimedia messages 125

pictures 156, 157, 282 sounds 58, 238 videos 157 priority levels 125, 183 Priority list 103 privacy mode 126, 132 private events 180 Private option 180 processor 301 Program Buttons tab 241 Program Files folder 229 Programs check box 237 Programs screen 30 programs. See applications; software Prompt if device unused for check box 248 Properties command 139 protected spreadsheets 201 protecting information 245–249 Treo device 245 proxy servers 257 PSW files 194 PUK (PIN unlock key) 292 punctuation marks 27, 29 Purge command 130 Purge screen 130 push technology 82	QCELP files 122 Quality command 156 Quick Keys 38, 51 Quick Tour 287 Quick Tour icon 287 Quick Tour icon 287 QuickTime Player 163 quitting applications 30, 254 R radio 301 RAS connections 256 reassigning buttons 241 Receive all incoming beams check box 225 receiving attachments 104 beamed information 225 email 103, 104, 279 meeting requests 106 multimedia messages 122, 126, 131 pictures 154 text messages 121, 126, 270 videos 154 Receiving Data message 225 recently-viewed web pages 141	rechargeable battery. See battery recipients, sending to multiple 102, 122 Record button action option 187 recording sounds 237 videos 156–157 voice notes 245 Recording icon 186 recording toolbar 186 records (data) 224 recurring appointments. See repeating appointments redialing phone numbers 40 redirector (websites) 281 Refresh command 138 refreshing web pages 138, 281 Region tab 239 regional Settings 239, 250 Regional Settings screen 239 regulatory numbers 300 reinstalling software or applications 261, 263 Reminder option 178
--	--	---

reminders adding 178, 183 events and 182 system alarms and 251 tasks and 184 turning on and off 237 remote access servers 256 remote files 256 Remove Programs icon 222, 224 Remove Programs list 223 Remove Programs screen 222, 224 Remove Split command 203 removing applications 222, 284 battery 263, 265 battery door 10 Bluetooth connections 146 certificates 252 contacts 175 directory services 107 documents 198 email accounts 99 events 181 expansion cards 227 favorites 140 files 219, 284	items from folders 219 items from libraries 166 items from playlists 167 messages 112, 130, 131 notes 187 partnerships 146, 271 pictures 162 speed-dial buttons 52 tasks 184 text 22 web files 142 workbooks 211 worksheets 211 Rename command 230 Rename/Move command 195, 198, 210, 229 renaming documents 198 expansion cards 230 items in folders 219 workbooks 210 worksheets 208 Repeat check box 238 Repeat command 165 repeating appointments 179 repeating current song 165 repeating sounds 238 repeating tasks 183	Replace All button 195, 210 Replace button 195, 210 replacing information 209 text 195 the battery 264–265 Request Delivery/Read Receipt check box 125 Require PIN when phone is used check box 247 reset button 8, 262 resets 248, 262–264, 268 caution for 263 resizing text 139 resolution (camera) 282 resolution (screen) 267, 302 Resolution command 155, 282 restarting Treo device. See resets restoring backups 264, 277 information 263, 264 sound settings 236 Resume playback option 127, 168 retrieving voicemail 44 Return key 26 reverse type 22

Revert to Saved command 162 revision marks 193 right action key 22 right-click menus. See shortcut menus Ringer switch 9, 236 ringer volume 59 ringer, silencing 42 ringtone files 122 ringtone managers 283 ringtones assigning to contacts 51, 59, 161, 174 creating video 161	safety guidelines 295 Save As command 141, 196 Save Image command 141 Save links option 142 Save password check box 83, 95, 98 Save to Contact Ring Tone command 161 Save to Contacts command 47 Save to list 229 Save to option 187 Save to Template command 127	Schedule command 85 Schedule screen 85 scheduled syncs 276, 279 schedules adding items to 177, 178, 179, 183 managing 177–181 organizing events for 180 removing events 181 removing tasks 184 sorting tasks on 184 unavailable time on 180 viewing daily 176 scheduling synchronization 84–85
downloading 57 previewing 58 selecting 57 roaming 85, 276 Roaming option 58 rotating pictures 157, 162 RTF files 193 RTSP files 160 running multiple applications 30 Running Programs tab 31, 254	Saved folder 103 saving documents 193, 194, 196, 198 email messages 103 files 228 multimedia items 127 multimedia messages 127 notes 187, 245 passwords 95, 98 phone numbers 46 pictures and videos 158 text messages 127 workbooks 200, 202, 211	screen activating items on 22 activating wrong features 267 adjusting brightness 238 adjusting display 238–240 aligning 239 arranging web pages on 138 battery life and 14 caring for 8 changing color themes for 235, 240 changing orientation 240

disabling touch-sensitivity for 245 locking 246 moving around on 19–21 scrolling in 20–21, 245 selecting items on 22 setting backgrounds for 161, 235 setting delays for 36 specifications for 302 troubleshooting 239, 267 turning on or off 35, 36, 254, 289 waking up 36, 45 screen fonts 238 Screen icon 238, 239 screen resolution 267, 302 Screen taps check box 237 Screen view 239 screens, returning to previous 21 screensavers 158 scroll arrows 21 scroll upon reaching the last line check box 245 scrolling device screen 20–21, 245 slides 199	spreadsheets 203 web pages 138 SD expansion cards 225 Search button 218 Search dialog box 217 Search for list 217, 218 Search results list 217, 218 searching contacts list 39 documents 195 spreadsheets 209 web pages 137 searching for files 217, 219 searching for information 195, 210, 217–218 searching for signal 14 secure websites 281 security 146, 245–249, 252 security certificates 137, 252 security options (web) 143 security tab 142, 247 Select All Text command 141 selecting applications 30 items in folders 219 items an expens 21, 22	menu items 23, 24 options in lists 22, 24, 25 speed-dial entries 32 tabs 20 web links 21, 138 self-portrait mirror 8, 155 Send Link via E-mail command 139 Send meeting requests via option 182 Send outgoing items check box 85 Send Sound command 237 Send via E-Mail command 223 Send/Receive command 104 sending copyrighted items 160 email 103, 104, 117, 139, 279 meeting requests 107, 179, 182 multimedia messages 123, 125, 128 pictures 160 sounds 237 text messages 42, 121 videos 160
Slides 199	items on screen 21, 22	sensitivity options 180, 183

Sent folder 112, 129	Show alphabetical index	silencing the ringer 42
serial numbers 300	option 175	silent alarm 237, 238
servers, troubleshooting 277, 278, 280	Show contact names only option 175	SIM smartcards 9, 11, 247, 292
See also Exchange servers	Show half hour slots option	Size option 196
service contracts 3	181	sketching 185
service providers 256, 270,	Show icons option 182	Skins tab 169
279	Show list 160, 228	Slide Show tab 157
Services tab 49, 61, 62, 64	Show Options command	slide show toolbar 160
Set as Hands-Free command	200	slide shows 158, 160, 199,
271	Show Pictures option 138	200
Set as Today Background	Show start and due dates	slide timing option 200
command 161	option 184	slider 21
Set reminders for new items	Show Tasks entry bar option	slides 124, 128
option 182, 184	185	smartcard. See SIM
Set up my proxy server	Show time stamps of each	smartcards
option 257	message option 132	smartphone
setting alarm clock 251	Show week numbers option	getting help with 259
settings. See options	182	troubleshooting 259
shaded lightning bolt 12	Shuffle command 165	SMS messaging 121, 292
sharing information 223	side button 7	soft resets 262
sheet list 203	signal, searching for 14	software
Shift cells options 210	signal strength 66, 267, 285	See also applications
Shift key 26, 27	signal-strength icon 35, 255	caution for hard resets and
Short Messaging Service.	Signature box 131	263
See SMS messaging	signatures 110, 131	included with device 4,
shortcut menus 24	Signatures screen 110, 131	302
shortcuts 22	silencing system sounds 9, 236	installing 76, 77, 220 purchasing 266

reinstalling 261, 263 songs. See music Sort By command 184 Sort by list 208, 219 Sort command 130, 208 sort options 184 sort order 208 sorting folder items 219 History list items 142 information 208 messages 130 pictures and videos 161 tasks 184 sound clips 122 Sound Mode buttons 236 sound settings 236, 237 sounds adding to pictures 124 changing alarm 252 customizing 236 playing 159 previewing 58, 238 recording 237 selecting event 238 sending 237 setting ringtone 57 setting system 237 silencing 9, 236	turning off event 238 Sounds & Notifications screen 57 Sounds & Notifications Settings icon 237 Sounds & Notifications Settings screen 237 Sounds & Notifications Settings screen 237 Sounds tab 237 Space key 26 speaker 8, 163 speakerphone 45, 285 Speakerphone command 45 special characters 29 special characters. See alternate characters; symbols special occasions 178 specifications 301 speech-impaired services 59 Speed Dial Options command 52 speed-dial buttons 37, 50–52 Spell Check command 103 spell-checking 103, 197 Spelling command 197 split bar 203 spreadsheet templates 200, 202, 211	spreadsheets See also Excel Mobile; workbooks; worksheets accessing 189 adding charts to 209 calculations in 203–205 changing order of worksheets 206 creating 200 defining filters for 208 deleting elements in 210 display options for 203 entering data in 202, 205 formatting 200, 207 insertion options for 205 scrolling 203 searching 209 sending 91 sorting in 208 unsupported features for 201 SSL (Secure Sockets Layer) 137 standby mode 156, 157 Start button 7, 30 Start menu 30, 240, 292 starting data connections 257
--	--	--

Excel Mobile 202	pictures 284	setting up 82, 86, 87
Internet Explorer Mobile	workbooks 210	stopping 89
137	streaming 292	troubleshooting 262, 272-
PowerPoint Mobile 199	Strikethrough option 197	278, 280
Word Mobile 194	stylus 9	synchronization software 73,
static 300	submenus 24	75, 76, 77, 275
status icons <mark>66, 129</mark>	Suggest words when	synchronizing
stereo headphones 163	entering text check box	addresses 275
Still image compression level	244	dates and time 250
list 158	support 287	email 13, 103, 272, 279,
Still Mode command 155	Swap button 48, 49	280
Stop command <mark>165</mark>	Symbol command 204	information 71, 73, 272
stopping playback 165	symbols 28, 29, 51, 204	manually 85
stopping synchronization 89	Sync button 86	media files 164
Storage Card folder 222, 230	sync cable 75, 79	multimedia files 153
storage card symbol 219	sync conflicts 83	offline 275
Storage Card tab 230, 254	sync schedules 276, 279	over Bluetooth
storage cards. See expansion	synchronization	connections 86
cards	backing up information	over IR ports 87
storage space 253, 277	and 263	playlists 164
Storage tab 112	battery life and 13	through USB hubs 274
storage temperatures 303	benefits of 69	wirelessly 72, 81, 86, 87,
storing	defaults for 72	277
applications 284	defined 293	with multiple computers
attachments 105, 113	hard resets and 263, 264	87
device 8	overview 71	with third-party
document files 196	preparing for 75	applications 73, 263
information 225, 284	scheduling 84–85	system alarms 251
passwords 83, 98	setting options for 88	system dates and time 250
	5 - 1 - 5 - 1 - 1 - 1 - 1 - 1 - 1 - 1 -	,

racks in documents 193 rables in 184 rables in documents 193 rables in documents 193 rables in documents 193 rables in 184 rables in documents 193 rables in 184 rables in documents 193 rab	
Task tab 183 notes 186, 187 spreadsheets 200, 202, adding notes to 183 completing 184 creating 183 customizing 184 deleting 184 displaying 184 filtering and sorting 184 marking as sensitive 183 setting due dates for 183 setting reminders for 183, 184 notes 186, 187 text files 252 text messages 127 deleting 13 text messages 127 forwarding text displaying 195 copying 141 deleting 195 copying 141 deleting 22 entering 26, 27, 244, 245 sending 42 sending 42	ng 22, 197 or copying 196 139, 238 22 cking 103, 197 cessing features 3 s 124 o 20 drop-down lists in g text in 22 through 20 2 ges 121 130, 131 ng 127 29 117 119 Ills and 45 Imbers in 41 126, 270 10 127 27

setting options for 125 sorting 130 troubleshooting 270	Thumbnail View 156, 157 Thumbnails button 157 TIF files 159	touch-sensitive feature 245 transactions 281 transferring
Text Size tab 238	time format settings 239	applications 229
Text Speed Dial button 51	time system settings 250	files 163, 166, 228, 229
text speed-dial buttons 38,	Time tab 239, 250	information 69, 261
50	time units 178	transition effects (slides) 200
text telephone devices. See	time zones 250	transmission delays 270
TTY devices	Timer 155	Transparency level list 161
themes 235, 240	tips 3	troubleshooting 259, 287
third-party applications	Today icon 235	Trusted Device list 144
accessing Outlook folders	Today screen	trusted devices 143, 144,
and 275	accessing 14, 31	147
caution for hard resets and	accessing Dial Pad from	See also partnerships
263	41	trusted pairs. See
compatibility with 219	color themes for 240	partnerships
deleting 284	components of 32	TTY devices 59
getting help with 283	customizing 161, 235	TTY/TDD options 60
installing 220, 283, 284	dialing from 36, 37, 40, 41	Turn on Bluetooth check box
navigator and 19, 284	overview 31	54, 144
previewing pictures and	recovering settings for	turning on or off
282	277	alarms 237, 251
reinstalling 261, 263	retrieving voicemail from	caller IDs 61
screen resolution and 267	43	Caps Lock 27
synchronizing with 73,	Today Settings screen 235	device 36
263	top view (device) 9	event sounds 238
troubleshooting 220, 266,	touchscreen. See screen	keyboard backlight 26
283–284	touchscreen lockout 245,	Keyguard 246
third-party vendors 73	246	Option Lock 27

reminders 237 Ringer switch 236 screen 35, 36, 254 wireless services 13 TXT files 193 Typing mode 187 U UMTS services 293 unauthorized users 245, 252 unavailable time slots 180 Underline option 197 underlining text 194, 197	urgent message icon 129 URLs 166, 199 See also web links USB connections 148 USB controllers 275 USB hubs 274 USB ports 79, 274 USB sync cable 79 Use above settings while roaming check box 85 Use network time zone check box 251	videos adding sounds 159 adding to messages 124 changing resolution 156 defaults for 159 downloading 163 limiting length 159 previewing 157 receiving 154 recording 156–157 saving 158 seenling 160
Ringer switch 236 screen 35, 36, 254 wireless services 13 TXT files 193 Typing mode 187 U UMTS services 293 unauthorized users 245, 252 unavailable time slots 180	URLs 166, 199 See also web links USB connections 148 USB controllers 275 USB hubs 274 USB ports 79, 274 USB sync cable 79 Use above settings while roaming check box 85 Use network time zone	adding sounds 159 adding to messages 124 changing resolution 156 defaults for 159 downloading 163 limiting length 159 previewing 157 receiving 154 recording 156–157 saving 158

folder contents 218 memory usage 253 multimedia messages 128 notifications 58, 238 on-device help 287 PDF files 193 pictures 153, 154, 159 power settings 254 Quick Tour documentation 287 running applications 254 space on expansion cards 230, 254 tasks 184 videos 153, 154, 159 web pages 137, 138 wireless settings 255 virtual private networks. See VPN connections voice captions 124 Voice Command button 242, 243 Voice Command screen 242 Voice Command settings 242, 266 voice commands 14, 243 Voice mail option 58	Voice recording format list 245 voice recording formats 245 voicemail customizing 51, 58 receiving notifications for 44 retrieving messages 44 sending calls to 42, 47 setting up 43 voicemail buttons 51 Voicemail icon 43, 44 voicemail systems 43 volume phone 15, 59 ringer 59 tapping sounds 237 Volume button 7, 15, 59 VPN clients 256, 272 VPN connections 96, 105, 256–257 VPN software 256 W waking up screen 36, 45 wallpaper 154 warranty 4	weak signals 267, 285 web addresses 32, 137, 281 See also web links web browser. See Internet Explorer Mobile web browsing memory consumption and 284 requirements for 3 secure sites and 137, 281 troubleshooting 281 web files 142 web links clearing 142 internal memory and 284 messages and 129, 139 Palm online support 287 selecting 21, 138 troubleshooting 281 web pages accessing 137, 139, 141, 281 arranging on screen 138 clearing links to 284 copying from 141 dialing from 41, 141 display options for 138 downloading items from
voice notes 185, 245	WBMP files 123	140, 221

hiding images on 138 moving through 138 playing media files from 166 refreshing 138, 281 resizing text on 139 returning to recently viewed 141 scrolling 138 searching 137 security settings for 143 selecting addresses on 281 sending email from 139 setting as home 142 viewing 137, 138 Web search field 137 websites See also web browsing accessing 135 compatibility with 137 connecting to 137, 147 ending connections to 257 redirectors and 281 searching over 137 submitting transactions and 281	Week view option 181 Windows Mobile devices 224, 261 Windows Mobile Getting Started Disc 4, 220 Windows Mobile operating system 266, 293 Windows Mobile software 220 wireless band setting 62 wireless connections 135, 143, 148 wireless coverage 14, 35 wireless features 13, 135, 255, 283 Wireless Manager 13, 36, 255 Wireless Manager command 13, 36 wireless modems 147 wireless services 13, 255 wireless synchronization 72, 81, 86, 87, 277 WMA files 160, 163 WMV files 160, 163 Word application 189 See also documents	Word Mobile application 20, 193–199 Word Mobile icon 194 word-processing features 193 workbook list 211 workbooks See also Excel Mobile application; spreadsheets creating 202 deleting 211 displaying 203 moving around in 203 naming 210 organizing 210 replacing information in 209 saving 200, 202, 211 searching 209 setting default template for 211 worksheet names 201 worksheets See also spreadsheets; workbooks adding 206
week numbers 182 Week View 176, 181	Word Completion tab 244 word matching 195, 210	adjusting column and row size for 207

deleting 211
entering defined names in 207
entering formulas in 204, 211
entering functions in 204
filtering data in 208
formatting options for 207
inserting cells, rows, and columns 205

moving between 203 naming 206 removing cells, rows, and columns 210 renaming 208 Writing mode 187

Y
Year View 177

Z ZIP files 219
zoom buttons (camera) 155
Zoom command 194
zoom icons (presentations)
199
Zoom In command 199
zoom options 155

zoom settings 201, 203, 245